

С**6055**/С**7570** МР С6000/МР С7500 *LD260c/LD275c* Aficio<sup>™</sup> мр с6000/с7500

## Operating Instructions Security Reference



**1** Getting Started

- 2 Authentication and its Application
- 3 Ensuring Information Security
- 4 Managing Access to the Machine
- 5) Enhanced Network Security
- 6 Specifying the Extended Security Functions
- 7) Troubleshooting
- 8) Appendix

Read this manual carefully before you use this machine and keep it handy for future reference. For safe and correct use, be sure to read the Safety Information in "About This Machine" before using the machine.

#### Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

#### Important

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

#### Notes:

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, your machine may include certain options as standard. For details, please contact your local dealer.

#### **Caution:**

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual might result in hazardous radiation exposure.

## **Manuals for This Machine**

Refer to the manuals that are relevant to what you want to do with the machine.

#### 🔂 Important

- Media differ according to manual.
- The printed and electronic versions of a manual have the same contents.
- Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader must be installed in order to view the manuals as PDF files.
- A Web browser must be installed in order to view the html manuals.
- For enhanced security, we recommend that you first make the following settings. For details, see "Setting Up the Machine", Security Reference.
  - Install the Device Certificate.
  - Enable SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption.
  - Change the user name and password of the administrator using Web Image Monitor.

#### **About This Machine**

Be sure to read the Safety Information in this manual before using the machine.

This manual provides an introduction to the functions of the machine. It also explains the control panel, preparation procedures for using the machine, how to enter text, and how to install the CD-ROMs provided.

#### Troubleshooting

Provides a guide to solving common problems, and explains how to replace paper, toner, staples, and other consumables.

#### Copy/ Document Server Reference

Explains Copier and Document Server functions and operations. Also refer to this manual for explanations on how to place originals.

#### **Facsimile Reference**

Explains Facsimile functions and operations.

#### **Printer Reference**

Explains Printer functions and operations.

#### Scanner Reference

Explains Scanner functions and operations.

#### Network Guide

Explains how to configure and operate the machine in a network environment, and use the software provided.

#### **General Settings Guide**

Explains User Tools settings, and Address Book procedures such as registering fax numbers, e-mail addresses, and user codes. Also refer to this manual for explanations on how to connect the machine.

#### **Security Reference**

This manual is for administrators of the machine. It explains security functions that you can use to prevent unauthorized use of the machine, data tampering, or information leakage. Be sure to read this manual when setting the enhanced security functions, or user and administrator authentication.

#### PostScript 3 Supplement

Explains how to set up and use PostScript 3.

#### **UNIX Supplement**

For "UNIX Supplement", please visit our Web site or consult an authorized dealer.

This manual includes descriptions of functions and settings that might not be available on this machine.

#### Information

Contains general notes on the machine, and information about the trademarks of product names used in the manuals.

#### Other manuals

- Manuals for DeskTopBinder Lite
  - DeskTopBinder Lite Setup Guide
  - DeskTopBinder Introduction Guide
  - Auto Document Link Guide

#### Note

- Manuals provided are specific to machine types.
- The following software products are referred to using general names:

Product name	General name	
DeskTopBinder Lite and DeskTopBinder Professional * 1	DeskTopBinder	
ScanRouter EX Professional *1 and ScanRouter EX Enterprise *1	The ScanRouter delivery software	

#### \*1 Optional

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Manuals for This Machine	1
How to Read This Manual	9
Symbols	9
IP Address	9
1. Getting Started	
Enhanced Security	
Glossary	
Setting Up the Machine	12
Security Measures Provided by this Machine	15
Using Authentication and Managing Users	15
Ensuring Information Security	15
Limiting and Controlling Access	17
Enhanced Network Security	
2. Authentication and its Application	
Administrators and Users	
Administrators	19
User	
The Management Function	
About Administrator Authentication	
About User Authentication	23
Enabling Authentication	25
Authentication Setting Procedure	25
Administrator Authentication	
Specifying Administrator Privileges	
Registering the Administrator	
Logging on Using Administrator Authentication	
Logging off Using Administrator Authentication	
Changing the Administrator	
Using Web Image Monitor	
User Authentication	40
User Code Authentication	41
Specifying User Code Authentication	41
Basic Authentication	

Specifying Basic Authentication	46
Authentication Information Stored in the Address Book	50
Specifying Login User Name and Login Password	50
Specifying Authentication Information to Log on	52
Windows Authentication	
Specifying Windows Authentication	
LDAP Authentication	69
Specifying LDAP Authentication	70
Integration Server Authentication	79
Specifying Integration Server Authentication	79
Printer Job Authentication	
If User Authentication is Specified	
User Code Authentication (Using the Control Panel)	
User Code Authentication (Using a Printer Driver)	
Login (Using the Control Panel)	
Log Off (Using the Control Panel)	
Login (Using a Printer Driver)	
Login (Using Web Image Monitor)	
Log Off (Using Web Image Monitor)	94
User Lockout Function	95
Auto Logout	
Authentication Using an External Device	100
3. Ensuring Information Security	
Preventing Unauthorized Copying	
Unauthorized Copy Prevention	101
Data Security for Copying	102
Printing Limitations	104
Notice	104
Printing with Unauthorized Copy Prevention and Data Security for Copying	105
Printing a Confidential Document	
Specifying a Locked Print File	
Printing a Locked Print File	109
Deleting Locked Print Files	110

Changing Passwords of Locked Print Files	112
Unlocking Locked Print Files	114
Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files	116
Assigning Users and Access Permission for Stored Files	116
Specifying Access Privileges for Files Stored using the Scanner and Fax Functions	119
Assigning the User and the Access Permission for the User's Stored Files	123
Specifying Passwords for Stored Files	126
Unlocking Files	127
Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission	130
Restrictions on Destinations	130
Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission	133
Email Encryption	133
Attaching an Electronic Signature	135
Protecting the Address Book	141
Address Book Access Permission	141
Encrypting Data in the Address Book	144
Encrypting Data on the Hard Disk	147
Enabling the Encryption Settings	147
Printing the Encryption Key	150
Updating the Encryption Key	152
Canceling Data Encryption	154
Deleting Data on the Hard Disk	157
Overwriting Data on the Hard Disk	157
4. Managing Access to the Machine	
Preventing Modification of Machine Settings	167
Menu Protect	
Menu Protect	
Limiting Available Functions	174
Specifying Which Functions are Available	174
Managing Log Files	177
Specifying Delete All Logs	
Transfer Log Setting	178
5. Enhanced Network Security	

Preventing Unauthorized Access	
Access Control	
Enabling/Disabling Protocols	182
Specifying Network Security Level	190
Encrypting Transmitted Passwords	194
Driver Encryption Key	194
Group Password for PDF files	196
IPP Authentication Password	197
Protection Using Encryption	199
SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption	199
User Settings for SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)	204
Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode	204
SNMPv3 Encryption	206
Transmission Using IPsec	209
Encryption and Authentication by IPsec	209
Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings and Encryption Key Manual Settings	210
IPsec Settings	211
Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Configuration Flow	218
Encryption Key Manual Settings Configuration Flow	223
telnet Setting Commands	224
Authentication by telnet	232
"authfree" Command	232
6. Specifying the Extended Security Functions	
Specifying the Extended Security Functions	233
Changing the Extended Security Functions	233
Procedure for Changing the Extended Security Functions	233
Settings	235
Other Security Functions	240
Fax Function	240
Scanner Function	240
Weekly Timer Code	241
Limiting Machine Operation to Customers Only	244
Settings	244

Specifying Service Mode Lock Preparation	
Canceling Service Mode Lock	
7. Troubleshooting	
Authentication Does Not Work Properly	
A Message Appears	
An Error Code Appears	
Machine Cannot Be Operated	
8. Appendix	
Supervisor Operations	
Logging on as the Supervisor	
Logging off as the Supervisor	
Changing the Supervisor	
Resetting an Administrator's Password	
Machine Administrator Settings	
System Settings	
Maintenance	
Copier / Document Server Features	
Facsimile Features	
Printer Features	
Scanner Features	
Settings via Web Image Monitor	
Settings via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin	
Network Administrator Settings	
System Settings	
Facsimile Features	
Scanner Features	
Settings via Web Image Monitor	
Settings via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin	
File Administrator Settings	
System Settings	
Facsimile Features	
Printer Features	
Settings via Web Image Monitor	

User Administrator Settings	295
System Settings	295
Settings via Web Image Monitor	295
Settings via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin	296
Document Server File Permissions	297
The Privilege for User Account Settings in the Address Book	299
User Settings - Control Panel Settings	
Copier / Document Server Features	
Printer Functions	
Printer Features	
Scanner Features	314
Facsimile Features	316
System Settings	
User Settings - Web Image Monitor Settings	327
Device Settings	328
Printer	338
Scanner	
Fax	344
Interface	
Network	
Functions That Require Options	354
INDEX	

## How to Read This Manual

#### Symbols

This manual uses the following symbols:

### **WARNING**

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in serious injury or death. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information" section of About This Machine.

### 

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in moderate or minor injury or damage to the machine or to property. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information" section of About This Machine.

#### Comportant 🔁

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

#### • Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

#### Reference

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

### []

Indicates the names of keys that appear on the machine's display panel.

### []

Indicates the names of keys on the machine's control panel.

#### **IP Address**

In this manual, "IP address" covers both IPv4 and IPv6 environments. Read the instructions that are relevant to the environment you are using.

# 1. Getting Started

This chapter describes the machine's security features and how to specify initial security settings.

## **Enhanced Security**

This machine's security functions can be enhanced by managing the machine and its users using the improved authentication functions.

By specifying access limits for the machine's functions and the documents and data stored in the machine, information leaks and unauthorized access can be prevented.

Data encryption also prevents unauthorized data access and tampering via the network.

#### **Authentication and Access Limits**

Using authentication, administrators manage the machine and its users. To enable authentication, information about both administrators and users must be registered in order to authenticate users via their login user names and passwords.

Four types of administrators manage specific areas of machine usage, such as settings and user registration.

Access limits for each user are specified by the administrator responsible for user access to machine functions and documents and data stored in the machine.

For details about the administrator and user roles, see "Administrators and Users".

#### **Encryption Technology**

This machine can establish secure communication paths by encrypting transmitted data and passwords.

#### Reference

• p.19 "Administrators and Users"

#### Glossary

#### Administrator

There are four types of administrators according to administrative function: machine administrator, network administrator, file administrator, and user administrator. We recommend that only one person takes each administrator role.

In this way, you can spread the workload and limit unauthorized operation by a single administrator.

Basically, administrators make machine settings and manage the machine; but they cannot perform normal operations, such as copying and printing.

#### User

A user performs normal operations on the machine, such as copying and printing.

11

#### File Creator (Owner)

This is a user who can store files in the machine and authorize other users to view, edit, or delete those files.

#### **Registered User**

Users with personal information registered in the Address Book who have a login password and user name.

#### Administrator Authentication

Administrators are authenticated by their login user name and login password, supplied by the administrator, when specifying the machine's settings or accessing the machine over the network.

#### User Authentication

Users are authenticated by a login user name and login password, supplied by the user, when specifying the machine's settings or accessing the machine over the network.

The user's login user name and password, as well as such personal information items as telephone number and e-mail address, are stored in the machine's Address Book. Personal information can be obtained from the Windows domain controller (Windows authentication), LDAP Server (LDAP authentication), or Integration Server (Integration Server Authentication) connected to the machine via the network.

#### Login

This action is required for administrator authentication and user authentication. Enter your login user name and login password on the machine's control panel. A login user name and login password may also be required when accessing the machine over the network or using such utilities as Web Image Monitor and SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

#### Logout

This action is required with administrator and user authentication. This action is required when you have finished using the machine or changing the settings.

#### Setting Up the Machine

If you want higher security, make the following setting before using the machine:

- 1. Turn the machine on.
- 2. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

3. Press [System Settings].

🚸 User Tools / Counter / Enquiry			
R		6	Copier / Document Features
	System Settings	6.	Facsimile Feat
		<u></u>	Printer Featur
ß	Maintenance		Scanner Featu

4. Press [Interface Settings].

Settings				
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interface Settings	File Adminis Transfer Toc	
hange / De	lete User Text		Interleave Print	
ound	Off		Output: Copier	
eeper	On		Output: Document Server	
Display	Up		Output: Facsimile	
ority	Copier		Output: Printer	

5. Specify the IPv4 Address.

For details on how to specify the IPv4 address, see "Interface Settings", General Settings Guide.

- 6. Connect the machine to the network.
- 7. Start Web Image Monitor, and then log on to the machine as the administrator.

For details about logging on to Web Image Monitor as an administrator, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

8. Install the device certificate.

For information on how to install the device certificate, see "Protection Using Encryption".

- 9. Enable secure sockets layer (SSL).
- 10. Enter the administrator's user name and password.

For details about specifying the administrator user name and password, see "Registering the Administrator".

The administrator's default account (user name: "admin"; password: blank) is unencrypted between steps 6 to 9. If acquired during this time, this account information could be used to gain unauthorized access to the machine over the network.

If you consider this risky, we recommend that you specify a temporary administrator password for accessing Web Image Monitor for the first time, before connecting to the network in step 6.

#### Reference

- p.38 "Using Web Image Monitor"
- p.199 "Protection Using Encryption"
- p.30 "Registering the Administrator"

## Security Measures Provided by this Machine

#### Using Authentication and Managing Users

#### **Enabling Authentication**

To control administrators' and users' access to the machine, perform administrator authentication and user authentication using login user names and login passwords. To perform authentication, the authentication function must be enabled. For details about authentication settings, see "Enabling Authentication".

#### Specifying Authentication Information to Log on

Users are managed using the personal information managed in the machine's Address Book.

By enabling user authentication, you can allow only people registered in the Address Book to use the machine. Users can be managed in the Address Book by the user administrator. For details about specifying information to log on, see "Basic Authentication".

#### Specifying Which Functions are Available

This can be specified by the user administrator. Specify the functions available to registered users. By making this setting, you can limit the functions available to users. For details about specifying which functions are available, see "Limiting Available Functions".

#### Reference

- p.25 "Enabling Authentication"
- p.46 "Basic Authentication"
- p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"

#### **Ensuring Information Security**

#### Preventing Unauthorized Copying (Unauthorized Copy Prevention)

Using the printer driver, you can embed a mask and pattern in the printed document. For details about preventing unauthorized copying, see "Preventing Unauthorized Copying". For details about specifying Unauthorized Copy Prevention, see "Printing with Unauthorized Copy Prevention and Data Security for Copying".

#### Preventing Unauthorized Copying (Data Security for Copying)

Using the printer driver to enable data security for the copying function, you can print a document with an embedded pattern of hidden text.

To gray out the copy or stored file of a copy-guarded document when the document is copied or stored, the optional security module is required. For details about Data Security for Copying, see "Data Security for Copying". 1

#### Printing confidential files

Using the printer's Locked Print, you can store files in the machine as confidential files and then print them. You can print a file using the machine's control panel and collect it on the spot to prevent others from seeing it. For details about printing confidential files, see "Printing a Confidential Document".

#### **Protecting Stored Files from Unauthorized Access**

You can specify who is allowed to use and access scanned files and the files in Document Server. You can prevent activities such as the printing of stored files by unauthorized users. For details about protecting stored files from unauthorized access, see "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files".

#### **Protecting Stored Files from Theft**

You can specify who is allowed to use and access scanned files and the files in Document Server. You can prevent activities such as the sending and downloading of stored files by unauthorized users. For details about protecting stored files from theft, see "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files".

#### Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission

You can specify in the Address Book which users are allowed to send files using the scanner or fax function.

You can also limit the direct entry of destinations to prevent files from being sent to destinations not registered in the Address Book. For details about preventing data leaks due to unauthorized transmission, see "Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission".

#### Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission

When sending mail from the scanner or forwarding a fax to a user registered in the Address Book, you can use S/MIME to protect its contents from interception and alteration, and attach an electronic signature to guarantee the sender's identity. For details about using S/MIME to protect e-mail transmission, see "Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission".

#### Protecting Registered Information in the Address Book

You can specify who is allowed to access the data in the Address Book. You can prevent the data in the Address Book being used by unregistered users.

To protect the data from unauthorized reading, you can also encrypt the data in the Address Book. For details about protecting registered information in the Address Book, see "Protecting the Address Book".

#### **Managing Log Files**

You can improve data security by deleting log files stored in the machine. By transferring the log files, you can check the history data and identify unauthorized access.

To transfer the log data, Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard is required. For details about managing log files, see "Managing Log Files".

#### **Encrypting Data on the Hard Disk**

Encrypt data stored on the hard disk to prevent information leakage. The HDD Encryption Unit is required for hard disk data encryption. For details about encrypting data on the hard disk, see "Encrypting Data on the Hard Disk".

1

#### Overwriting the Data on the Hard Disk

Before disposing of the machine, make sure all data on the hard disk is deleted.

Prevent data leakage by automatically deleting transmitted printer jobs from the memory.

To overwrite the hard disk data, the optional DataOverwriteSecurity Unit is required. For details about overwriting the data on the hard disk, see "Deleting Data on the Hard Disk".

#### Reference

- p.101 "Preventing Unauthorized Copying"
- p.105 "Printing with Unauthorized Copy Prevention and Data Security for Copying"
- p.102 "Data Security for Copying"
- p.108 "Printing a Confidential Document"
- p.116 "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files"
- p.130 "Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission"
- p.133 "Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission"
- p.141 "Protecting the Address Book"
- p.177 "Managing Log Files"
- p.147 "Encrypting Data on the Hard Disk"
- p.157 "Deleting Data on the Hard Disk"

#### Limiting and Controlling Access

#### Preventing Modification or Deletion of Stored Data

You can allow selected users to access stored scan files and files stored in Document Server.

You can permit selected users who are allowed to access stored files to modify or delete the files. For details about limiting and controlling access, see "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files".

#### **Preventing Modification of Machine Settings**

The machine settings that can be modified depend on the type of administrator account.

Register the administrators so that users cannot change the administrator settings. For details about preventing modification of machine settings, see "Preventing Modification of Machine Settings".

#### **Limiting Available Functions**

To prevent unauthorized operation, you can specify who is allowed to access each of the machine's functions. For details about limiting available functions for users and groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

#### Reference

p.116 "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files"

- p.167 "Preventing Modification of Machine Settings"
- p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"

#### **Enhanced Network Security**

#### **Preventing Unauthorized Access**

You can limit IP addresses or disable ports to prevent unauthorized access over the network and protect the Address Book, stored files, and default settings. For details about preventing unauthorized access, see "Preventing Unauthorized Access".

#### **Encrypting Transmitted Passwords**

Prevent login passwords, group passwords for PDF files, and IPP authentication passwords from being revealed by encrypting them for transmission.

Also, encrypt the login password for administrator authentication and user authentication. For details about encrypting transmitted passwords, see "Encrypting Transmitted Passwords".

#### Safer Communication Using SSL, SNMPv3 and IPsec

You can encrypt this machine's transmissions using SSL, SNMPv3, and IPsec. By encrypting transmitted data and safeguarding the transmission route, you can prevent sent data from being intercepted, analyzed, and tampered with. For details about safer communication using SSL, SNMPv3 and IPsec, see "Protection Using Encryption".

#### Reference

- p.181 "Preventing Unauthorized Access"
- p.194 "Encrypting Transmitted Passwords"
- p.199 "Protection Using Encryption"

# 2. Authentication and its Application

This chapter describes how to register the administrator and specify the authentication methods. How to log on and log off once authentication is enabled is also described here.

## **Administrators and Users**

When controlling access using the authentication method specified by an administrator, select the machine's administrator, enable the authentication function, and then use the machine.

The administrators manage access to the allocated functions, and users can use only the functions they are permitted to access. When the authentication function is enabled, the login user name and login password are required in order to use the machine.

Specify administrator authentication, and then specify user authentication.

For details about specifying a login user name and password, see "Specifying Login User Name and Login Password".

#### Comportant 🗋

• If user authentication is not possible because of a problem with the hard disk or network, you can use the machine by accessing it using administrator authentication and disabling user authentication. Do this if, for instance, you need to use the machine urgently.

Reference

• p.50 "Specifying Login User Name and Login Password"

#### Administrators

There are four types of administrators: machine administrator, network administrator, file administrator, and user administrator.

Sharing administrator tasks eases the burden on individual administrators while also limiting unauthorized operation by administrators. You can also specify a supervisor who can change each administrator's password. Administrators are limited to managing the machine's settings and controlling user access, so they cannot use functions such as copying and printing. To use these functions, the administrator must register as a user in the Address Book and then be authenticated as the user.

#### User Administrator

This is the administrator who manages personal information in the Address Book.

A user administrator can register/delete users in the Address Book or change users' personal information.

Users registered in the Address Book can also change and delete their own information.

If any of the users forget their password, the user administrator can delete it and create a new one, allowing the user to access the machine again.

For instructions on registering the user administrator, see "Registering the Administrator".

#### Machine Administrator

This is the administrator who mainly manages the machine's default settings. You can set the machine so that the default for each function can only be specified by the machine administrator. By making this setting, you can prevent unauthorized people from changing the settings and allow the machine to be used securely by its many users.

For instructions on registering the machine administrator, see "Registering the Administrator".

#### **Network Administrator**

This is the administrator who manages the network settings. You can set the machine so that network settings such as the IP address and settings for sending and receiving e-mail can only be specified by the network administrator.

By making this setting, you can prevent unauthorized users from changing the settings and disabling the machine, and thus ensure correct network operation.

For instructions on registering the network administrator, see "Registering the Administrator".

#### **File Administrator**

This is the administrator who manages permission to access stored files. You can specify passwords to allow only registered users with permission to view and edit files stored in Document Server. By making this setting, you can prevent data leaks and tampering due to unauthorized users viewing and using the registered data.

For instructions on registering the file administrator, see "Registering the Administrator".

#### Supervisor

The supervisor can delete an administrator's password and specify a new one. The supervisor cannot specify defaults or use normal functions. However, if any of the administrators forget their password and cannot access the machine, the supervisor can provide support.

For instructions on registering the supervisor, see "Supervisor Operations".

#### 🖪 Reference 🔵

- p.30 "Registering the Administrator"
- p.271 "Supervisor Operations"

#### User

Users are managed using the personal information in the machine's Address Book.

By enabling user authentication, you can allow only people registered in the Address Book to use the machine. Users can be managed in the Address Book by the user administrator.

For details about registering users in the Address Book, see "Administrator Tools", General Settings Guide, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help, or Web Image Monitor Help.

### **The Management Function**

The machine has an authentication function requiring a login user name and login password. By using the authentication function, you can specify access limits for individual users and groups of users. Using access limits, you can not only limit the machine's available functions but also protect the machine settings and files and data stored in the machine. For instructions on changing the administrator's password, see "Supervisor Operations".

#### 🚼 Important

- If you have enabled [Administrator Authentication Management], make sure not to forget the administrator login user name and login password. If an administrator login user name or login password is forgotten, a new password must be specified using the supervisor's authority.
- Be sure not to forget the supervisor login user name and login password. If you do forget them, a service representative will have to return the machine to its default state. This will result in all data in the machine being lost and the service call may not be free of charge.

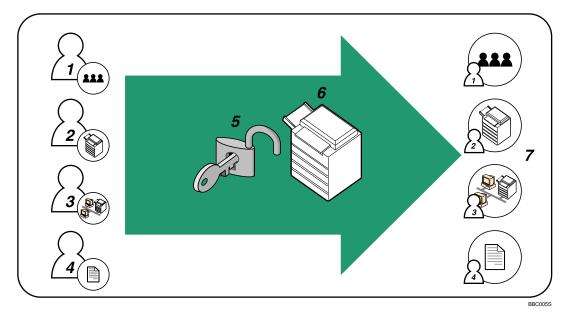
#### Reference

• p.271 "Supervisor Operations"

#### **About Administrator Authentication**

There are four types of administrators: user administrator, machine administrator, network administrator, and file administrator.

For details about each administrator, see "Administrators and Users".



#### 1. User Administrator

This administrator manages personal information in the Address Book. You can register/delete users in the Address Book or change users' personal information.

#### 2. Machine Administrator

This administrator manages the machine's default settings. It is possible to enable only the machine administrator to set data security for copying, log deletion and other defaults.

#### 3. Network Administrator

This administrator manages the network settings. You can set the machine so that network settings such as the IP address and settings for sending and receiving e-mail can be specified by the network administrator only.

#### 4. File Administrator

This administrator manages permission to access stored files. You can specify passwords for Locked Print files stored in the Document Server so that only authorized users can view and change them.

#### 5. Authentication

Administrators must enter their login user name and password to be authenticated.

#### 6. This machine

7. Administrators manage the machine's settings and access limits.

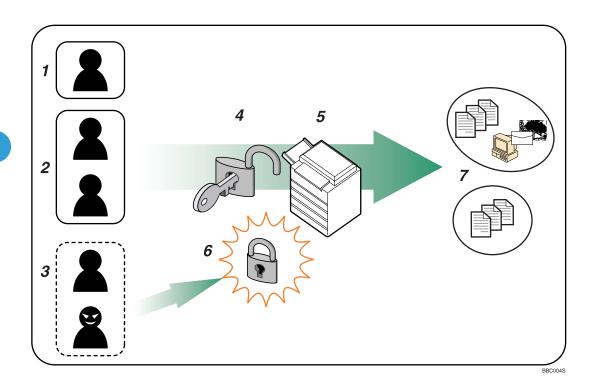
#### E Reference

• p.19 "Administrators and Users"

#### About User Authentication

This machine has an authentication function to prevent unauthorized access.

By using login user name and login password, you can specify access limits for individual users and groups of users.



#### 1. User

A user performs normal operations on the machine, such as copying and printing.

#### 2. Group

A group performs normal operations on the machine, such as copying and printing.

#### 3. Unauthorized User

#### 4. Authentication

Using a login user name and password, user authentication is performed.

#### 5. This Machine

#### 6. Access Limit

Using authentication, unauthorized users are prevented from accessing the machine.

7. Authorized users and groups can use only those functions permitted by the administrator.

### **Enabling Authentication**

To control administrators' and users' access to the machine, perform administrator or user authentication using login user names and passwords. To perform authentication, the authentication function must be enabled. To specify authentication, you need to register administrators.

To perform Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication, the optional printer function must be installed.

For instructions on registering the administrator, see "Registering the Administrator".

#### Reference

• p.30 "Registering the Administrator"

#### **Authentication Setting Procedure**

Specify administrator authentication and user authentication according to the following chart:

Administrator Authentication	Specifying Administrator Privileges	
See "Administrator Authentication".	See "Specifying Administrator Privileges".	
	Registering the Administrator	
	See "Registering the Administrator".	
User Authentication	Specifying User Authentication	
See "User Authentication".	Authentication that requires only the machine:	
	User Code Authentication	
	See "User Code Authentication".	
	Basic Authentication.	
	See "Basic Authentication".	
	Authentication that requires external devices:	
	Windows Authentication	
	See "Windows Authentication".	
	LDAP Authentication	
	See "LDAP Authentication".	
	Integration Server Authentication	
	See "Integration Server Authentication".	

#### Note

- To specify Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication, you must first specify administrator authentication.
- You can specify User Code Authentication without specifying administrator authentication.

#### Reference

- p.27 "Administrator Authentication"
- p.40 "User Authentication"
- p.27 "Specifying Administrator Privileges"
- p.30 "Registering the Administrator"
- p.41 "User Code Authentication"
- p.46 "Basic Authentication"
- p.56 "Windows Authentication"
- p.69 "LDAP Authentication"
- p.79 "Integration Server Authentication"

### Administrator Authentication

Administrators are handled differently from the users registered in the Address Book. When registering an administrator, you cannot use a login user name already registered in the Address Book. Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication and Integration Server Authentication are not performed for an administrator, so an administrator can log on even if the server is unreachable due to a network problem.

Each administrator is identified by a login user name. One person can act as more than one type of administrator if multiple administrator authorities are granted to a single login user name. You can specify the login user name, login password, and encryption password for each administrator. The encryption password is a password for performing encryption when specifying settings using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

The password registered in the machine must be entered when using applications such as SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Administrators are limited to managing the machine's settings and controlling user access, so they cannot use functions such as copying and printing. To use these functions, the administrator must register as a user in the Address Book and then be authenticated as the user.

#### Note

 Administrator authentication can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### **Specifying Administrator Privileges**

To specify administrator authentication, set Administrator Authentication Management to [On]. In addition, if enabled in the settings, you can choose how the initial settings are divided among the administrators as controlled items.

To log on as an administrator, use the default login user name and login password.

The defaults are "admin" for the login name and blank for the password. For details about changing the administrator password using the supervisor's authority, see "Supervisor Operations".

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

#### 🔂 Important

- If you have enabled [Administrator Authentication Management], make sure not to forget the
  administrator login user name and login password. If an administrator login user name or login
  password is forgotten, a new password must be specified using the supervisor's authority.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

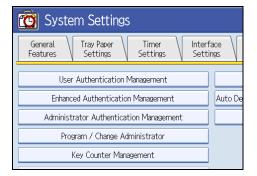
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



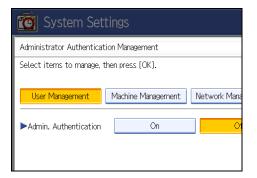
4. Press [Administrator Authentication Management].



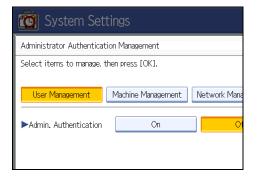
If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [VNext] to scroll down to other settings.

2

 Press [User Management], [Machine Management], [Network Management], or [File Management] key to select which settings to manage.

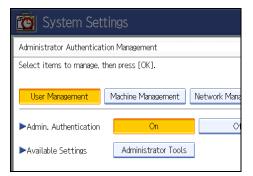


6. Set "Admin. Authentication" to [On].



"Available Settings" appears.

7. Select the settings to manage from "Available Settings".



The selected settings will be unavailable to users.

"Available Settings" varies depending on the administrator.

For details about "Available Settings", see "Managing Access to the Machine".

To specify administrator authentication for more than one category, repeat steps 5 to 7.

- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

- p.271 "Supervisor Operations"
- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.167 "Managing Access to the Machine"

#### **Registering the Administrator**

If administrator authentication has been specified, we recommend only one person take each administrator role.

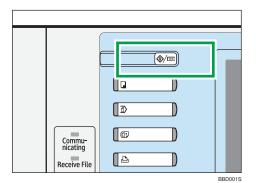
The sharing of administrator tasks eases the burden on individual administrators while also limiting unauthorized operation by a single administrator. You can register up to four login user names (Administrators 1-4) to which you can grant administrator privileges.

Administrator authentication can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

If administrator authentication has already been specified, log on using a registered administrator name and password.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

#### 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



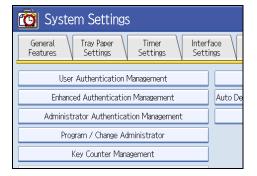
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interface Settings	File Administrato	r
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
Output: Copier		Copy Tray
	Output: Document Server	Copy Tray
	Output: Facsimile	
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

4. Press [Program / Change Administrator].



5. In the line for the administrator whose authority you want to specify, press [Administrator 1], [Administrator 2], [Administrator 3] or [Administrator 4], and then press [Change].

System Settings			
Program / Change Administrator			
Supervisor Change	Administrator 1 Change	Administrator 2 Change	
►User Administrator	Administrator 1	Administrator :	
►Machine Administrator	Administrator 1	Administrator :	
<b>.</b>	t destateteet en 1	A destated and so	

If you allocate each administrator's authority to a different person, the screen appears as follows:



6. Press [Change] for the login user name.



7. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].



8. Press [Change] for the login password.

C System Settings	
Administrator 1	
▶Login User Name	admin
►Login Password	Change
►Encryption Password	Change

9. Enter the login password, and then press [OK].

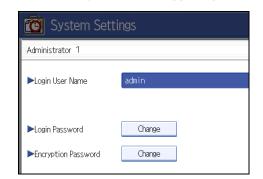
Login Password	
Enter the login password, then press [OK].	
- 0/128	
<u>` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</u>	
q w e r t y u	
asdfghj	
z x c v b n m	

Follow the password policy to make the login password more secure.

For details about the password policy and how to specify it, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

10. If a password reentry screen appears, enter the login password, and then press [OK].

11. Press [Change] for the encryption password.



12. Enter the encryption password, and then press [OK].

Encryption Password	
Enter encryption password, then press [OK].	
- 0/32	
<u>` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</u>	
q w e r t y u	
a s d f g h j	
z x c v b n m	

13. If a password reentry screen appears, enter the encryption password, and then press [OK].

#### 14. Press [OK] twice.

You will be logged off.

15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### **Note**

- You can use up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols when registering login user names and login passwords. Keep in mind that passwords are case-sensitive.
- User names cannot contain numbers only, a space, colon (:), or quotation mark ("), nor can they be left blank.
- Do not use Japanese, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese, or Hangul double-byte characters when entering the login user name or password. If you use multi-byte characters when entering the login user name or password, you cannot authenticate using Web Image Monitor.

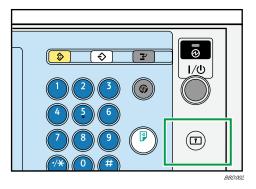
#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"

#### Logging on Using Administrator Authentication

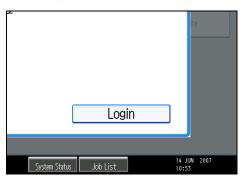
If administrator authentication has been specified, log on using an administrator's user name and password. This section describes how to log on.

1. Press the [Login/Logout] key.



The message, "Press [Login], then enter the login user name and login password." appears.

2. Press [Login].



If you do not want to log in, press [Cancel].

3. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].



When you log on to the machine for the first time as the administrator, enter "admin".

4. Enter the login password, and then press [OK].



"Authenticating... Please wait." appears, followed by the screen for specifying the default.

#### Vote

- If user authentication has already been specified, a screen for authentication appears.
- To log on as an administrator, enter the administrator's login user name and login password.
- If you log on using administrator authority, the name of the administrator logging on appears.
- If you log on using a login user name with the authority of more than one administrator, "Administrator" appears.
- If you try to log on from an operating screen, "Selected function cannot be used." appears. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key to change the default.

#### Logging off Using Administrator Authentication

If administrator authentication has been specified, be sure to log off after completing settings. This section explains how to log off after completing settings.

- 1. Press the [Login/Logout] key.
- 2. Press [Yes].

	<del>log out.</del>	iry
	Yes	
System Status	Job List	14 JUN 2007 10:59

#### Changing the Administrator

Change the administrator's login user name and login password. You can also assign administrator authority to the login user names [Administrator 1] to [Administrator 4]. To combine the authorities of multiple administrators, assign multiple administrators to a single administrator.

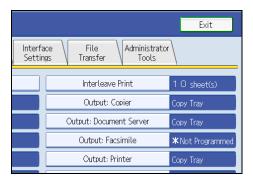
For example, to assign machine administrator authority and user administrator authority to [Administrator 1], press [Administrator 1] in the lines for the machine administrator and the user administrator.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

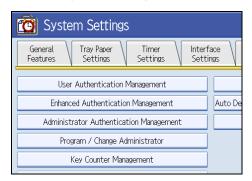
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Program / Change Administrator].



In the line for the administrator you want to change, press [Administrator 1], [Administrator 2], [Administrator 3] or [Administrator 4], and then press [Change].

System Settings						
Program / Change Administ	Program / Change Administrator					
Supervisor Administrator 1 Administrator 2 Change Change Change Change						
►User Administrator	Administrator 1	Administrator :				
► Machine Administrator	Administrator 1	Administrator :				
<b>N N N N N N N N N N</b>	Adaptatation 4	A destated as a second				

- 6. Press [Change] for the setting you want to change, and re-enter the setting.
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Press [OK] twice.

You will be logged off.

9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

#### Using Web Image Monitor

Using Web Image Monitor, you can log on to the machine and change the administrator settings. This section describes how to access Web Image Monitor.

For details about Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.

1. Open a Web browser.

2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

- 3. Click [Login].
- 4. Enter the login name and password of an administrator, and then click [Login].
- 5. Make settings as desired.

#### Note

• When logging on as an administrator use the login name and password of an administrator set in the machine. The default login name is "admin" and the password is blank.

### **User Authentication**

There are five types of user authentication methods: User Code authentication, Basic authentication, Windows authentication, LDAP authentication, and Integration Server authentication. To use user authentication, select an authentication method on the control panel, and then make the required settings for the authentication. The settings depend on the authentication method.

#### Note

- User Code authentication is used for authenticating on the basis of a user code, and Basic authentication, Windows authentication, LDAP authentication, and Integration Server authentication are used for authenticating individual users.
- A user code account that has no more than eight digits and is used for User Code authentication, can be carried over and used as a login user name even after the authentication method has switched from User Code authentication to Basic authentication, Windows authentication, LDAP authentication, or Integration Server authentication. In this case, since the User Code authentication does not have a password, the login password is set as blank.
- When authentication switches to an external authentication method (Windows authentication, LDAP authentication, or Integration Server authentication), authentication will not occur, unless the external authentication device has the carried over user code account previously registered. However, the user code account will remain in the Address Book of the machine despite an authentication failure. From a security perspective, when switching from User Code authentication to another authentication method, we recommend that you delete accounts you are not going to use, or set up a login password. For details about deleting accounts, see "Deleting a Registered Name", General Settings Guide. For details about changing passwords, see "Specifying Login User Name and Login Password".
- You cannot use more than one authentication method at the same time.
- User authentication can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### Reference

• p.50 "Specifying Login User Name and Login Password"

2

# **User Code Authentication**

This is an authentication method for limiting access to functions according to a user code. The same user code can be used by more than one user. For details about specifying user codes, see "Authentication Information", General Settings Guide.

For details about specifying the user code for the printer driver, see Printer Reference or the printer driver Help.

For details about specifying the TWAIN driver user code, see the TWAIN driver Help.

🚼 Important

 To control the use of DeskTopBinder for the delivery of files stored in the machine, select Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication.

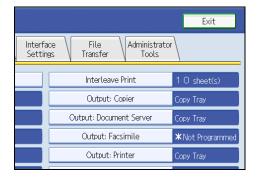
#### Specifying User Code Authentication

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

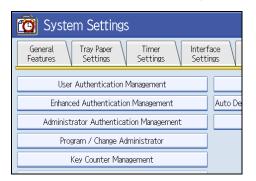
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



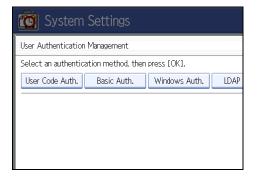
3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [User Authentication Management].

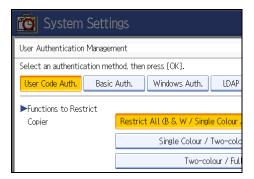


5. Select [User Code Auth.].



If you do not want to use user authentication management, select [Off].

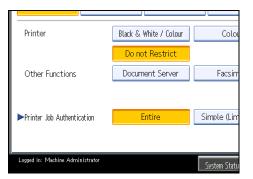
6. Select which of the machine's functions you want to limit.



The selected settings will be unavailable to users.

For details about limiting available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

7. Select the "Printer Job Authentication" level.



If you select [Entire] or [Simple (All)], proceed to "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)".

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], proceed to "Selecting Simple (Limitation)".

For a description of the printer job authentication levels, see "Printer Job Authentication".

#### Reference

- p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"
- p.43 "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)"
- p.43 "Selecting Simple (Limitation)"
- p.88 "Printer Job Authentication"

#### Selecting Entire or Simple (All)

If you select [Entire], you cannot print using a printer driver or a device that does not support authentication. To print under an environment that does not support authentication, select [Simple (All)] or [Simple (Limitation)].

If you select [Simple (All)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

- 1. Press [OK].
- 2. Press [Exit].
- 3. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Selecting Simple (Limitation)

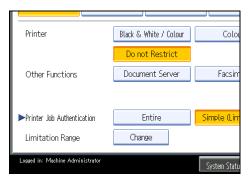
If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can specify clients for which printer job authentication is not required. Specify [Parallel Interface: Simple], [USB: Simple] and the clients' IPv4 address range in which printer job authentication is not required. Specify this setting if you want to print using unauthenticated printer drivers or without any printer driver. Authentication is required for printing with non-specified devices.

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

#### 1. Press [Simple (Limitation)].



2. Press [Change].



3. Specify the range in which [Simple (Limitation)] is applied to "Printer Job Authentication".



You can specify the IPv4 address range to which this setting is applied, and whether or not to apply the setting to the parallel and USB interfaces.

4. Press [Exit].

- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [Exit].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# **Basic Authentication**

Specify this authentication method when using the machine's Address Book to authenticate each user. Using Basic authentication, you can not only manage the machine's available functions but also limit access to stored files and to the personal data in the Address Book. Under Basic authentication, the administrator must specify the functions available to each user registered in the Address Book.

#### **Specifying Basic Authentication**

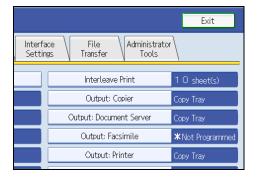
This can be specified by the machine administrator.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



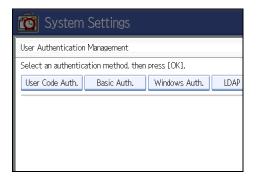
3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [User Authentication Management].

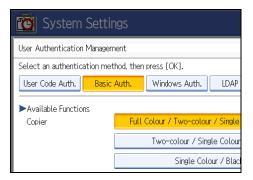
# General Features Tray Paper Settings Timer Settings Interface Settings User Authentication Management Interface Interfac

5. Select [Basic Auth.].



If you do not want to use user authentication management, select [Off].

6. Select which of the machine's functions you want to permit.

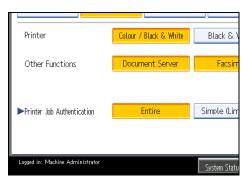


Basic Authentication will be applied to the selected functions.

Users can use the selected functions only.

For details about specifying available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

7. Select the "Printer Job Authentication" level.



If you select [Entire] or [Simple (All)], proceed to "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)".

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], proceed to "Selecting Simple (Limitation)".

For a description of the printer job authentication levels, see "Printer Job Authentication".

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"
- p.48 "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)"
- p.49 "Selecting Simple (Limitation)"
- p.88 "Printer Job Authentication"

#### Selecting Entire or Simple (All)

If you select [Entire], you cannot print using a printer driver or a device that does not support authentication. To print under an environment that does not support authentication, select [Simple (All)] or [Simple (Limitation)].

If you select [Simple (All)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

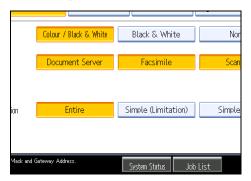
- 1. Press [Exit].
- 2. Press [OK].
- 3. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Selecting Simple (Limitation)

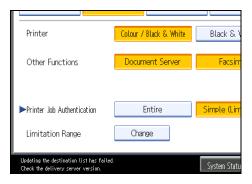
If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can specify clients for which printer job authentication is not required. Specify [Parallel Interface: Simple], [USB: Simple] and the clients' IPv4 address range in which printer job authentication is not required. Specify this setting if you want to print using unauthenticated printer drivers or without any printer driver. Authentication is required for printing with non-specified devices.

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Press [Simple (Limitation)].



2. Press [Change].



3. Specify the range in which [Simple (Limitation)] is applied to "Printer Job Authentication".



You can specify the IPv4 address range to which this setting is applied, and whether or not to apply the setting to the parallel and USB interfaces.

- 4. Press [Exit].
- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [Exit].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Authentication Information Stored in the Address Book

This can be specified by the user administrator. For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Administrator Authentication".

If you have specified User Authentication, you can specify access limits for individual users and groups of users. Specify the setting in the Address Book for each user.

Users must have a registered account in the Address Book in order to use the machine when User Authentication is specified. For details about user registration, see "Registering Names", General Settings Guide.

User authentication can also be specified via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or Web Image Monitor.

#### Reference

p.27 "Administrator Authentication"

#### Specifying Login User Name and Login Password

In [Address Book Management], specify the login user name and login password to be used for User Authentication Management.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].
- 3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

# General Trav Paper Timer Interface Features Settings Settings Settings Address Book Management Interface Settings Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group Interface Interface Address Book: Change Order Print Address Book: Destination List Interface

5. Select the user or group.

Press (New Progra	m] to add new or	select from list	below to edit. S	Selection can b
Program / (	Change	Delete		
All Users			Fax	E-mail
Frequent	AB CD	EF GH	IJK LMN	OPQ RS
[00021] USET	[00003] BERLIN OFF ICE	[00004] LONDON OFF ICE	【00005】 NEW YORK O FFICE	[00006] TORONTO O FICE
[00008] DETROIT FA CTORY	[00011] LOS ANGELE S FACT	[00001] ABCD COMPA NY	[00009] SAN FRANCI SCO OF	(00010) SYDNEY OF ICE

6. Press [Auth. Info].



7. Press [Change] for "Login User Name".



- 8. Enter a login user name, and then press [OK].
- 9. Press [Change] for "Login Password".

🔯 System Settings						
Program / Change Ad	dress Book					
Names /	Auth. Info	Protection	Fax C	est.		
►Auth. Info at Login						
Login User Name	333	533				
Login Password		Change				
►SMTP Authenticat	ion Us	se Auth. Info at I	Login	Specify		

- 10. Enter a login password, and then press [OK].
- 11. If a password reentry screen appears, enter the login password, and then press [OK].
- 12. Press [OK].
- 13. Press [Exit] twice.
- 14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Specifying Authentication Information to Log on

The login user name and password specified in [Address Book Management] can be used as the login information for "SMTP Authentication", "Folder Authentication", and "LDAP Authentication".

If you do not want to use the login user name and password specified in [Address Book Management] for "SMTP Authentication", "Folder Authentication", or "LDAP Authentication", see "Address Book", General Settings Guide.

For details about specifying login user name and login password, see "Specifying Login User Name and Login Password".

#### 🔁 Important

- When using [Use Auth. Info at Login] for "SMTP Authentication", "Folder Authentication", or "LDAP Authentication", a user name other than "other", "admin", "supervisor" or "HIDE\*\*\*" must be specified. The symbol "\*\*\*" represents any character.
- To use [Use Auth. Info at Login] for "SMTP authentication", a login password up to 128 characters in length must be specified.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interfa Settin		r
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier	Copy Tray
	Output: Document Server	Copy Tray
	Output: Facsimile	stNot Programmed
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

4. Press [Address Book Management].

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [VNext] to scroll down to other settings.



5. Select the user or group.

Press (New Progra	m] to add new or	select from list	below to edit. :	Selection can b
Program /	Change	Delete		
·····				
All Users			Fax	E-mail
Frequent	AB CD	EF GH	IJK LMN	OPQ RST
[00021] USET	[00003] BERLIN OFF ICE	[00004] LONDON OFF ICE	【00005】 NEW YORK O FFICE	[00006] TORONTO O FICE
[00008] DETROIT FA CTORY	[00011] LOS ANGELE S FACT	(00001) ABCD COMPA NY	[00009] SAN FRANCI SCO OF	[00010] SYDNEY OF ICE

6. Press [Auth. Info].

🔯 System Settings					
Program / Change	e Address Book				
Names	Auth. Info Protection Fax D	)est.			
►Name	LONDON OFFICE				
	Change				
►Key Display	LONDON OFFICE	►Re			
	Change				
►Select Title					

7. Select [Use Auth. Info at Login] in "SMTP Authentication".



If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [♥Next] to scroll down to other settings. For folder authentication, select [Use Auth. Info at Login] in "Folder Authentication". For LDAP authentication, select [Use Auth. Info at Login] in "LDAP Authentication".

- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### 

• p.50 "Specifying Login User Name and Login Password"

## Windows Authentication

Specify this authentication when using the Windows domain controller to authenticate users who have their accounts on the directory server. Users cannot be authenticated if they do not have their accounts in the directory server. Under Windows authentication, you can specify the access limit for each group registered in the directory server. The Address Book stored in the directory server can be registered to the machine, enabling user authentication without first using the machine to register individual settings in the Address Book. If you can obtain user information, the sender's address (From:) is fixed to prevent unauthorized access when sending e-mails under the scanner function and forwarding received e-mails.

Windows authentication can be performed using one of two authentication methods: NTLM or Kerberos authentication. The operational requirements for both methods are listed below.

#### **Operational Requirements for NTLM authentication**

To specify NTLM authentication, the following requirements must be met:

- This machine only supports NTLMv1 authentication.
- A domain controller has been set up in a designated domain.
- This function is supported by the operating systems listed below. To obtain user information when running Active Directory, use LDAP. If SSL is being used, a version of Windows that supports TLS v1, SSL v2, or SSL v3 is required.
  - Windows NT 4.0 Server
  - Windows 2000 Server
  - Windows Server 2003

#### **Operational Requirements for Kerberos authentication**

To specify Kerberos authentication, the following requirements must be met:

- A domain controller must be set up in a designated domain.
- The operating system must be able to support KDC (Key Distribution Center). To obtain user
  information when running Active Directory, use LDAP. If SSL is being used, a version of Windows
  that supports TLSv1, SSLv2, or SSLv3 is required. Compatible operating systems are listed below.
  - Windows 2000 Server
  - Windows Server 2003

#### 🔁 Important

- During Windows Authentication, data registered in the directory server, such as the user's e-mail address, is automatically registered in the machine. If user information on the server is changed, information registered in the machine may be overwritten when authentication is performed.
- Users managed in other domains are subject to user authentication, but they cannot obtain items such as e-mail addresses.

- If you have created a new user in the domain controller and selected "User must change password at next logon", log on to the machine from the computer to change the password before logging on from the machine's control panel.
- If the authenticating server only supports NTLM when Kerberos authentication is selected on the machine, the authenticating method will automatically switch to NTLM.
- If Kerberos authentication and SSL encryption are set at the same time, e-mail addresses cannot be obtained.

#### Note

- Enter the login password correctly; keeping in mind that it is case-sensitive.
- The first time you access the machine, you can use the functions available to your group. If you are not registered in a group, you can use the functions available under [\*Default Group]. To limit which functions are available to which users, first make settings in advance in the Address Book.
- When accessing the machine subsequently, you can use all the functions available to your group and to you as an individual user.
- Users who are registered in multiple groups can use all the functions available to those groups.
- A user registered in two or more global groups can use all the functions available to members of those groups.
- If the "Guest" account on the Windows server is enabled, even users not registered in the domain controller can be authenticated. When this account is enabled, users are registered in the Address Book and can use the functions available under [\*Default Group].

#### **Specifying Windows Authentication**

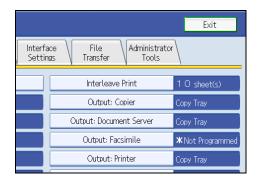
This can be specified by the machine administrator.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

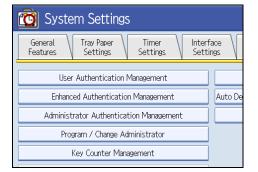
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



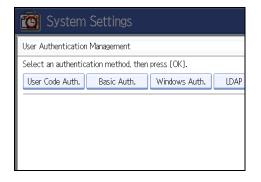
#### 3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [User Authentication Management].



5. Select [Windows Auth.].



If you do not want to use user authentication management, select [Off].

6. If you want to use Kerberos authentication, press [On].

System Setting	S					
User Authentication Managemen	t					
Select an authentication method	Select an authentication method, then press [OK].					
User Code Auth. Basic Au	th. Windows Aut	<mark>h.</mark> LDAP				
►Kerberos Authentication	On	0				
▶Domain Name						

If you want to use NTLM authentication, press [Off] and proceed to step 8.

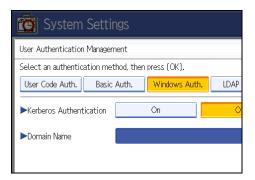
7. Select a Kerberos authentication realm and proceed to step 9.

🔯 System Settings					
User Authentication	Manager	nent			
Select an authentic	ation me	thod, ther	press [OK].		
User Code Auth.	Basic Auth. Windows Auth. LDAP				
►Kerberos Authent	ication		On		0
►Realm Name		1: 🗶 N	lot Programmed		2

To enable Kerberos authentication, a realm must be registered beforehand. The realm name must be registered in capital letters. For details about registering a realm, see "Programming the Realm", General Settings Guide.

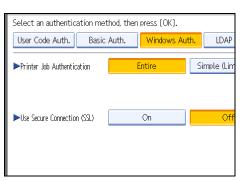
Up to 5 realms can be registered.

8. Press [Change] for "Domain Name", enter the name of the domain controller to be authenticated, and then press [OK].



2

9. Select the "Printer Job Authentication" level.



If you select [Entire] or [Simple (All)], proceed to "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)".

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], proceed to "Selecting Simple (Limitation)".

For a description of the printer job authentication levels, see "Printer Job Authentication".

#### Reference

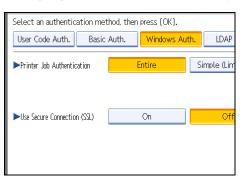
- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.60 "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)"
- p.63 "Selecting Simple (Limitation)"
- p.88 "Printer Job Authentication"

#### Selecting Entire or Simple (All)

If you select [Entire], you cannot print using a printer driver or a device that does not support authentication. To print in an environment that does not support authentication, select [Simple (All)] or [Simple (Limitation)].

If you select [Simple (All)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Press [On] for "Use Secure Connection (SSL)".



If you are not using secure sockets layer (SSL) for authentication, press [Off].

If global groups have been registered under Windows server, you can limit the use of functions for each global group.

You need to create global groups in the Windows server in advance and register in each group the users to be authenticated. You also need to register in the machine the functions available to the global group members. Create global groups in the machine by entering the names of the global groups registered in the Windows Server. (Keep in mind that group names are case sensitive.) Then specify the machine functions available to each group.

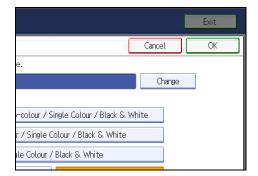
If global groups are not specified, users can use the available functions specified in [\*Default Group]. If global groups are specified, users not registered in global groups can use the available functions specified in "\*Default Group". By default, all functions are available to \*Default Group members. Specify the limitation on available functions according to user needs.

2. Under "Group", press [Program / Change], and then press [\* Not Programmed].

If the setting to be s	pecified does not	appear, press	[▼Next] to so	croll down to	other settings.
0		11 /1	L ' J		0

Select an authentication	n method, ther	n press [OK].		
User Code Auth.	Basic Auth.	Windows A	Nuth.	LDAP
▶Group	Progr	am / Change		Del
★Default Group	🗶 Not Pro	grammed	<b>≭</b> No	t Program
★ Not Programmed	🗶 Not Pro	grammed	<b>≭</b> No	t Program
★ Not Programmed	★ Not Pro	grammed		

3. Under "Group Name", press [Change], and then enter the group name.



- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. Select which of the machine's functions you want to permit.

Enter a group name, then select function(s) to use.				
►Available Functions				
Printer	Colour / Black & White	Black & Wh		
Other Functions	Document Server	Facsimile		

Windows Authentication will be applied to the selected functions.

Users can use the selected functions only.

For details about specifying available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

- 6. Press [OK] twice.
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Note

- Under Windows Authentication, you can select whether or not to use secure sockets layer (SSL) authentication.
- To automatically register user information such as fax numbers and e-mail addresses under Windows authentication, it is recommended that communication between the machine and domain controller be encrypted using SSL.
- Under Windows Authentication, you do not have to create a server certificate unless you want to automatically register user information such as fax numbers and e-mail addresses using SSL.

#### 🖪 Reference 🥥

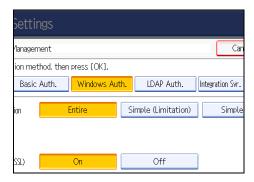
• p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"

#### Selecting Simple (Limitation)

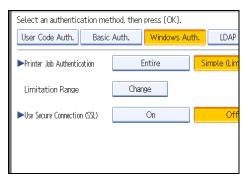
If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can specify clients for which printer job authentication is not required. Specify [Parallel Interface: Simple], [USB: Simple] and the clients' IPv4 address range in which printer job authentication is not required. Specify this setting if you want to print using unauthenticated printer drivers or without any printer driver. Authentication is required for printing with non-specified devices.

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Press [Simple (Limitation)].



2. Press [Change].

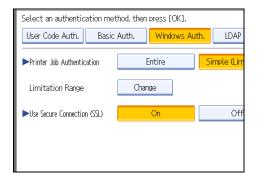


3. Specify the range in which [Simple (Limitation)] is applied to "Printer Job Authentication".



You can specify the IPv4 address range to which this setting is applied, and whether or not to apply the setting to the parallel and USB interfaces.

- 4. Press [Exit].
- 5. Press [On] for "Use Secure Connection (SSL)".



If you are not using secure sockets layer (SSL) for authentication, press [Off].

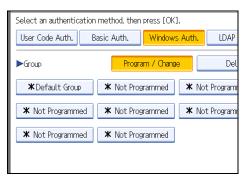
If global groups have been registered under Windows server, you can limit the use of functions for each global group.

You need to create global groups in the Windows server in advance and register in each group the users to be authenticated. You also need to register in the machine the functions available to the global group members. Create global groups in the machine by entering the names of the global groups registered in the Windows Server. (Keep in mind that group names are case sensitive.) Then specify the machine functions available to each group.

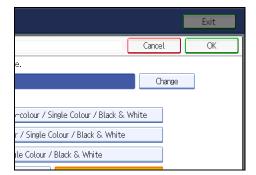
If global groups are not specified, users can use the available functions specified in [\*Default Group]. If global groups are specified, users not registered in global groups can use the available functions specified in "\*Default Group". By default, all functions are available to \*Default Group members. Specify the limitation on available functions according to user needs.

6. Under "Group", press [Program / Change], and then press [\* Not Programmed].

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.



7. Under "Group Name", press [Change], and then enter the group name.



- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Select which of the machine's functions you want to permit.

Enter a group name, then select function(s) to use.		
►Available Functions		
Printer	Colour / Black & White	Black & Wh
Other Functions	Document Server	Facsimile

Windows Authentication will be applied to the selected functions.

Users can use the selected functions only.

For details about specifying available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

- 10. Press [OK] twice.
- 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note** 

- Under Windows Authentication, you can select whether or not to use secure sockets layer (SSL) authentication.
- To automatically register user information such as fax numbers and e-mail addresses under Windows authentication, it is recommended that communication between the machine and domain controller be encrypted using SSL.
- Under Windows Authentication, you do not have to create a server certificate unless you want to automatically register user information such as fax numbers and e-mail addresses using SSL.

#### Reference

• p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"

2

#### Installing Internet Information Services (IIS) and Certificate services

Specify this setting if you want the machine to automatically obtain e-mail addresses registered in Active Directory.

We recommended you install Internet Information Services (IIS) and Certificate services as the Windows components.

Install the components, and then create the server certificate.

If they are not installed, install them as follows:

- 1. Select [Add/Remove Programs] on the Control Panel.
- 2. Select [Add/Remove Windows Components].
- 3. Select the "Internet Information Services (IIS)" check box.
- 4. Select the "Certificate Services" check box, and then click [Next].
- 5. Installation of the selected Windows components starts, and a warning message appears.
- 6. Click [Yes].
- 7. Click [Next].
- 8. Select the Certificate Authority, and then click [Next]. On the displayed screen, "Enterprise root CA" is selected.
- 9. Enter the Certificate Authority name (optional) in "CA Identifying Information", and then click [Next].
- 10. Leave "Data Storage Location" at its default, and then click [Next].

Internet Information Services and Certificate services are installed.

#### Creating the Server Certificate

After installing Internet Information Services (IIS) and Certificate services Windows components, create the Server Certificate as follows:

- 1. Start Internet Services Manager.
- 2. Right-click [Default Web Site], and then click [Properties].
- 3. On the "Directory Security" tab, click [Server Certificate].

Web Server Certificate Wizard starts.

- 4. Click [Next].
- 5. Select [Create a new certificate], and then click [Next].
- 6. Select [Prepare the request now, but send it later], and then click [Next].
- Enter the required information according to the instructions given by Web Server Certificate Wizard.

 Check the specified data, which appears as "Request File Summary", and then click [Next]. The server certificate is created.

#### If the fax number cannot be obtained

If the fax number cannot be obtained during authentication, specify the setting as follows:

- 1. Start C:\WINNT\SYSTEM32\adminpak.
- 2. Start Setup Wizard.
- 3. Select [Install all of the Administrator Tools], and then click [Next].
- 4. On the "Start" menu, select [Run].
- 5. Enter "mmc", and then click [OK].
- 6. On the "Console", select [Add/Remove Snap-in].
- 7. Click [Add].
- 8. Select [Active Directory Schema], and then click [Add].
- 9. Select [Facsimile Telephone Number].
- 10. Right-click, and then click [Properties].
- 11. Select "Replicate this attribute", and then click [Apply].

#### Installing the Device Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

Install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

This section explains the use of a certificate issued by a certificate authority as the device certificate.

Enter the device certificate contents issued by the certificate authority.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and password.

- Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security". The Device Certificate page appears.
- Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to install.

2

- 6. Click [Install].
- 7. Enter the contents of the device certificate.
- 8. In the "Certificate Request" box, enter the contents of the device certificate received from the certificate authority.
- 9. Click [OK].

"Installed" appears under "Certificate Status" to show that a device certificate for the machine has been installed.

10. Click [Logout].

# **LDAP** Authentication

Specify this authentication method when using the LDAP server to authenticate users who have their accounts on the LDAP server. Users cannot be authenticated if they do not have their accounts on the LDAP server. The Address Book stored in the LDAP server can be registered to the machine, enabling user authentication without first using the machine to register individual settings in the Address Book. When using LDAP authentication, to prevent the password information being sent over the network unencrypted, it is recommended that communication between the machine and LDAP server be encrypted using SSL. You can specify on the LDAP server whether or not to enable SSL. To do this, you must create a server certificate for the LDAP server.

Using Web Image Monitor, you can specify whether or not to check the reliability of the connecting SSL server. For details about specifying LDAP authentication using Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### 🔂 Important

- During LDAP authentication, the data registered in the LDAP server, such as the user's e-mail address, is automatically registered in the machine. If user information on the server is changed, information registered in the machine may be overwritten when authentication is performed.
- Under LDAP authentication, you cannot specify access limits for groups registered in the LDAP server.
- Enter the user's login user name using up to 32 characters and login password using up to 128 characters.
- Do not use double-byte Japanese, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese, or Hangul characters when entering the login user name or password. If you use double-byte characters, you cannot authenticate using Web Image Monitor.
- If using ActiveDirectory in LDAP authentication when Kerberos authentication and SSL are set at the same time, e-mail addresses cannot be obtained.

#### **Operational Requirements for LDAP Authentication**

To specify LDAP authentication, the following requirements must be met:

- The network configuration must allow the machine to detect the presence of the LDAP server.
- When SSL is being used, TLSv1, SSLv2, or SSLv3 can function on the LDAP server.
- The LDAP server must be registered in the machine.
- When registering the LDAP server, the following setting must be specified.
  - Server Name
  - Search Base
  - Port Number
  - SSL Communication
  - Authentication

Select either Kerberos, DIGEST, or Cleartext authentication.

• User Name

You do not have to enter the user name if the LDAP server supports "Anonymous Authentication".

• Password

You do not have to enter the password if the LDAP server supports "Anonymous Authentication".

#### Note

- When you select Cleartext authentication, LDAP Simplified authentication is enabled. Simplified authentication can be performed with a user attribute (such as cn, or uid), instead of the DN.
- You can also prohibit blank passwords at login for simplified authentication. For details about LDAP Simplified authentication, contact your sales representative.
- Under LDAP Authentication, if "Anonymous Authentication" in the LDAP server's settings is not set to Prohibit, users who do not have an LDAP server account might still be able to gain access.
- If the LDAP server is configured using Windows Active Directory, "Anonymous Authentication" might be available. If Windows authentication is available, we recommend you use it.
- The first time an unregistered user accesses the machine after LDAP authentication has been specified, the user is registered in the machine and can use the functions available under "Available Functions" during LDAP Authentication. To limit the available functions for each user, register each user and corresponding "Available Functions" setting in the Address Book, or specify "Available Functions" for each registered user. The "Available Functions" setting becomes effective when the user accesses the machine subsequently.
- To enable Kerberos for LDAP authentication, a realm must be registered beforehand. The realm must be programmed in capital letters. For details about registering a realm, see the "Programming the LDAP Server", or "Programming the Realm", General Settings Guide.

#### Specifying LDAP Authentication

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



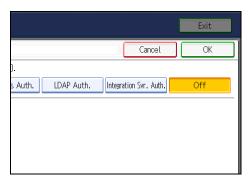
3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interface Settings		-
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier	Copy Tray
	Output: Document Server	Copy Tray
	Output: Facsimile	stNot Programmed
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

4. Press [User Authentication Management].



5. Select [LDAP Auth.].



If you do not want to use user authentication management, select [Off].

6. Select the LDAP server to be used for LDAP authentication.

1anagement				Ca
ion method, the	n press [OK].			
Basic Auth. Windows Auth. LDA			Auth.	Integration Svr
	abcd server			★ Not Progra
	★ Not Programmed			★ Not Progra

7. Select the "Printer Job Authentication" level.

You can specify the IPv4 address range to which this setting is applied, and whether or not to apply the setting to the parallel and USB interfaces.

	J	
►LDAP Servers	abcd serve	r
	* Not Program	nmed
	🗶 Not Program	imed
SSL setting for encrypted cor	mmunication can be chang	ged in Program
▶ Printer Job Authentication	Entire	Simple (Lim
Limitation Range	Change	
		System Statu

If you select [Entire] or [Simple (All)], proceed to "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)".

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], proceed to "Selecting Simple (Limitation)".

For a description of the printer job authentication levels, see "Printer Job Authentication".

#### Reference

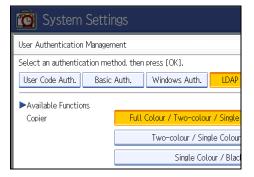
- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.73 "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)"
- p.75 "Selecting Simple (Limitation)"
- p.88 "Printer Job Authentication"

#### Selecting Entire or Simple (All)

If you select [Entire], you cannot print using a printer driver or a device that does not support authentication. To print under an environment that does not support authentication, select [Simple (All)] or [Simple (Limitation)].

If you select [Simple (All)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Select which of the machine's functions you want to permit.

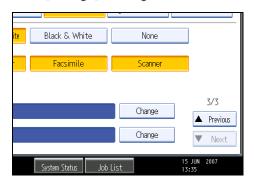


LDAP Authentication will be applied to the selected functions.

Users can use the selected functions only.

For details about specifying available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

2. Press [Change] for "Login Name Attribute".



3. Enter the login name attribute, and then press [OK].

Use the Login Name Attribute as a search criterion to obtain information about an authenticated user. You can create a search filter based on the Login Name Attribute, select a user, and then retrieve the user information from the LDAP server so it is transferred to the machine's Address Book.

To specify multiple login attributes, place a comma (,) between them. The search will return hits for either or both attributes.

Also, if you place an equal sign (=) between a login attribute and a value (for example: cn=abcde, uid=xyz), the search will return only hits that match the values specified for the attributes. This search function can also be applied when Cleartext authentication is specified.

When authenticating using the DN format, login attributes do not need to be registered.

The method for selecting the user name depends on the server environment. Check the server environment and enter the user name accordingly.

Login Name Attribute
Enter login name attribute, then press [OK].
- 0/32
<u>` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</u>
q w e r t y u
as df ghj
z x c v b n m

4. Press [Change] for "Unique Attribute".

ite	Black & White	;	None	
	Facsimile		Scanner	-
			Change Change	3/3
	System Status	Job Lis	t	15 JUN 2007 13:35

5. Enter the unique attribute and then press [OK].

Unique Attribute	
Enter unique attribute, then press [OK].	
- 0/32	
<u>`</u> 123456	7
q w e r t y u	
a s d f g h j	
z x c v b n m	1

Specify Unique Attribute on the machine to match the user information in the LDAP server with that in the machine. By doing this, if the Unique Attribute of a user registered in the LDAP server matches that of a user registered in the machine, the two instances are treated as referring to the same user. You can enter an attribute such as "serialNumber" or "uid". Additionally, you can enter "cn" or "employeeNumber", provided it is unique. If you do not specify the Unique Attribute, an account with the same user information but with a different login user name will be created in the machine.

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

• p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"

#### Selecting Simple (Limitation)

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can specify clients for which printer job authentication is not required. Specify [Parallel Interface: Simple], [USB: Simple] and the clients' IPv4 address range in which printer job authentication is not required. Specify this setting if you want to print using unauthenticated printer drivers or without any printer driver. Authentication is required for printing with non-specified devices.

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Press [Simple (Limitation)].



2. Press [Change].

►LDAP Servers	abcd server		
	★ Not Programmed		
	* Not Programmed		
SSL setting for encrypted communication can be changed in Program			
▶ Printer Job Authentication	Entire	Simple (Lim	
Limitation Range	Change		
		System Statu	

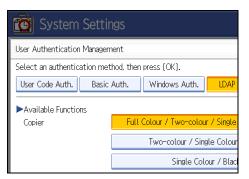
3. Specify the range in which [Simple (Limitation)] is applied to "Printer Job Authentication".



You can specify the IPv4 address range to which this setting is applied, and whether or not to apply the setting to the parallel and USB interfaces.

4. Press [Exit].

5. Select which of the machine's functions you want to permit.



LDAP Authentication will be applied to the selected functions.

Users can use the selected functions only.

For details about specifying available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

6. Press [Change] for "Login Name Attribute".

ite	Black & Whit	ie	-	None			
-	Facsimile			Scanner			
				Change Change		▲ ▼	3/3 Previous Next
	System Status	Job Li:	st		15. 13:		2007

7. Enter the login name attribute, and then press [OK].

Use the Login Name Attribute as a search criterion to obtain information about an authenticated user. You can create a search filter based on the Login Name Attribute, select a user, and then retrieve the user information from the LDAP server so it is transferred to the machine's Address Book.

To specify multiple login attributes, place a comma (,) between them. The search will return hits for either or both attributes.

Also, if you place an equals sign (=) between two login attributes (for example: cn=abcde, uid=xyz), the search will return only hits that match the attributes. This search function can also be applied when Cleartext authentication is specified.

When authenticating using the DN format, login attributes do not need to be registered.

The method for selecting the user name depends on the server environment. Check the server environment and enter the user name accordingly.

2



8. Press [Change] for "Unique Attribute".

ite	Black & White	None	
-	Facsimile	Scanner	
		Change	3/3
		Change	▼ Next
	System Status Job	List	15 JUN 2007 13:35

9. Enter the unique attribute and then press [OK].

Unique Attribute
Enter unique attribute, then press [OK].
- 0/32
<u>` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</u>
q w e r t y u
asdfghj
z x c v b n m

Specify Unique Attribute on the machine to match the user information in the LDAP server with that in the machine. By doing this, if the Unique Attribute of a user registered in the LDAP server matches that of a user registered in the machine, the two instances are treated as referring to the same user. You can enter an attribute such as "serialNumber" or "uid". Additionally, you can enter "cn" or "employeeNumber", provided it is unique. If you do not specify the Unique Attribute, an account with the same user information but with a different login user name will be created in the machine.

- 10. Press [OK].
- 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

• p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"

# Integration Server Authentication

To use Integration Server authentication, you need a server on which ScanRouter software that supports authentication is installed.

For external authentication, the Integration Server authentication collectively authenticates users accessing the server over the network, providing a server-independent, centralized user authentication system that is safe and convenient.

For example, if the delivery server and the machine share the same Integration Server authentication, single sign-on is possible using DeskTopBinder.

To use Integration Srv. Auth., access to a server on which ScanRouter System, or Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard and Authentication Manager are installed, other than the machine, is required. For details about the software, contact your sales representative.

Using Web Image Monitor, you can specify that the server reliability and site certificate are checked every time you access the SSL server. For details about specifying SSL using Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### 🔂 Important

- During Integration Server authentication, the data registered in the server, such as the user's e-mail address, is automatically registered in the machine.
- If user information on the server is changed, information registered in the machine may be overwritten when authentication is performed.

**Vote** 

 The default administrator name for ScanRouter System or Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/ Standard, "Admin", differs from the server, "admin".

#### Specifying Integration Server Authentication

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

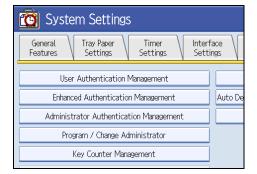
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [User Authentication Management].



5. Select [Integration Svr. Auth.].

If you do not want to use User Authentication Management, select [Off].

				Exit	]
		Cano	cel 🗌	OK	וכ
).					
s Auth. Ll	DAP Auth.	Integration Svr. /	Auth.	Off	

6. Press [Change] for "Server Name".

			Exit
		Cancel	ОК
]. s Auth.	LDAP Auth.	ntegration Svr. Auth.	Off
		Change	
	Windows (Native)	Windows (NT Co	mpatible)
	Basic (Integration Server)	]	_

Specify the name of the server for external authentication.

7. Enter the server name, and then press [OK].

Server Name	
Enter server name, then press [OK].	
-	0/64
<u>`</u> 1 2 3 4 5 6	7
qwertyu	1
a s d f g h	j
z x c v b n	m

Enter the IPv4 address or host name.

8. In "Authentication Type", select the authentication system for external authentication. Select an available authentication system. For general usage, select [Default].

Select an authentication method, then press [OK].				
User Code Auth. Basic Auth. Windows Auth. LDAP				
►Server Name				
►Authentication Type	Default	Windows		
	Notes	Basic (Integr		
►Domain Name				
▶URL	Obtain URL	Not Obtaine		

9. Press [Change] for "Domain Name".

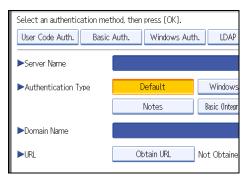
	Change	
Windows (Native)	Windows (NT Comp	patible)
Basic (Integration Server)		
	Change	1/3
Not Obtained		<ul><li>Previous</li><li>Next</li></ul>
System Status Job Lis	st	15 JUN 2007 13:39

10. Enter the domain name, and then press [OK].



You cannot specify a domain name under an authentication system that does not support domain login.

#### 11. Press [Obtain URL].



The machine obtains the URL of the server specified in "Server Name".

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [▼Next] to scroll down to other settings.

If "Server Name" or the setting for enabling SSL is changed after obtaining the URL, the URL is "Not Obtained".

#### 12. Press [Exit].

In the "Authentication Type", if you have not registered a group, proceed to step 17.

If you have registered a group, proceed to step 13.

If you set "Authentication Type" to [Windows (Native)] or [Windows (NT Compatible)], you can use the global group.

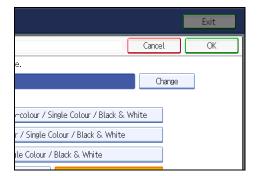
If you set "Authentication Type" to [Notes], you can use the Notes group. If you set "Authentication Type" to [Basic (Integration Server)], you can use the groups created using the Authentication Manager.

#### 13. Under "Group", press [Program / Change], and then press [\* Not Programmed].

🔯 System Settings						
User Authentication Mana	User Authentication Management					
Select an authentication	method, then press [OK].					
User Code Auth. Ba	asic Auth. Windows Auth. LDAP					
►Group	Program / Change Del					
★Default Group	* Not Programmed * Not Programm					
★ Not Programmed	* Not Programmed * Not Program					

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

14. Under "Group Name", press [Change], and then enter the group name.



- 15. Press [OK].
- 16. Select which of the machine's functions you want to permit.

Enter a group name, then select function(s) to use.				
►Group Name				
► Available Functions				
Copier	Full Colour / Two-colour / Single Co			
	Two-colour / Single Colour /			
	Single Colour / Black 8			
	Black & White Only			

Authentication will be applied to the selected functions.

Users can use the selected functions only.

For details about specifying available functions for individuals or groups, see "Limiting Available Functions".

- 17. Press [OK].
- 18. Select the "Printer Job Authentication" level.

Select an authentication method, then press [OK].       User Code Auth.       Basic Auth.       Windows Auth.       LDAP					
▶ Printer Job Authentication	Entire	Simple (Lim			
Limitation Range	Change				
►Use Secure Connection (SSL)	On	Off			

If you select [Entire] or [Simple (All)], proceed to "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)".

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], proceed to "Selecting Simple (Limitation)".

For a description of the printer job authentication levels, see "Printer Job Authentication".

#### Reference

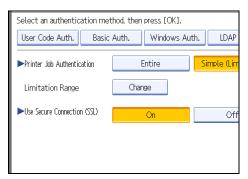
- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.174 "Limiting Available Functions"
- p.85 "Selecting Entire or Simple (All)"
- p.85 "Selecting Simple (Limitation)"
- p.88 "Printer Job Authentication"

#### Selecting Entire or Simple (All)

If you select [Entire], you cannot print using a printer driver or a device that does not support authentication. To print in an environment that does not support authentication, select [Simple (All)] or [Simple (Limitation)].

If you select [Simple (All)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Press [On] for "Use Secure Connection (SSL)", and then press [OK].



To not use secure sockets layer (SSL) for authentication, press [Off].

2. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

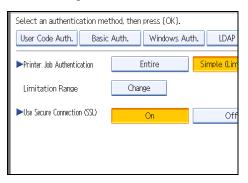
#### Selecting Simple (Limitation)

If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can specify clients for which printer job authentication is not required. Specify [Parallel Interface: Simple], [USB: Simple] and the clients' IPv4 address range in which printer job authentication is not required. Specify this setting if you want to print using unauthenticated printer drivers or without any printer driver. Authentication is required for printing with non-specified devices. If you select [Simple (Limitation)], you can print even with unauthenticated printer drivers or devices. Specify this setting if you want to print with a printer driver or device that cannot be identified by the machine or if you do not require authentication for printing. However, note that, because the machine does not require authentication in this case, it may be used by unauthorized users.

1. Press [Simple (Limitation)].

Settir	ngs					
1anagerr	nent					Car
ion met	hod, then	press [OK].				
Basic	Auth.	Windows Au	th.	LDAP Auth.	Integr	ation Svr.
ion		Intire	Si	mple (Limitation)		Simple
SSL)		On		Off	1	

2. Press [Change].



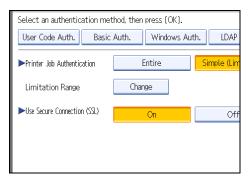
3. Specify the range in which [Simple (Limitation)] is applied to "Printer Job Authentication".



You can specify the IPv4 address range to which this setting is applied, and whether or not to apply the setting to the parallel and USB interfaces.

4. Press [Exit].

5. Press [On] for "Use Secure Connection (SSL)", and then press [OK].



To not use secure sockets layer (SSL) for authentication, press [Off].

6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2

# **Printer Job Authentication**

This section explains Printer Job Authentication.

#### Printer Job Authentication Levels and Printer Job Types

This section explains the relationship between printer job authentication levels and printer job types. Depending on the combination of printer job authentication level and printer job type, the machine may not print properly. Set an appropriate combination according to the operating environment.

User authentication is supported by the RPCS and PCL printer drivers.

A: Printing is possible regardless of user authentication.

B: Printing is possible if user authentication is successful. If user authentication fails, the print job is reset.

C: Printing is possible if user authentication is successful and [Driver Encryption Key] for the printer driver and machine match.

[User Authentication Management]	Specified	Specified	Specified	Specified	[off]
[Printer Job Authentication]	[Simple (All)]	[Simple (All)]	[Entire]	[Entire]	-
[Restrict Use of Simple Encryption]	[Off]	[On]	[Off]	[On]	-
Printer Job Type 1	С	С	С	С	А
Printer Job Type 2	В	Х	В	Х	А
Printer Job Type 3	Х	Х	Х	Х	А
Printer Job Type 4	А	А	В	В	А
Printer Job Type 5	А	А	Х	Х	А
Printer Job Type 6	А	А	Х	Х	А
Printer Job Type 7	В	В	В	В	А

X: Printing is not possible regardless of user authentication, and the print job is reset.

#### **Printer Job Authentication**

• [Entire]

The machine authenticates all printer jobs and remote settings, and cancels jobs and settings that fail authentication.

Printer Jobs: Job Reset

Settings: Disabled

• [Simple (All)]

The machine authenticates printer jobs and remote settings that have authentication information, and cancels the jobs and settings that fail authentication.

Printer jobs and settings without authentication information are performed without being authenticated.

• [Simple (Limitation)]

You can specify the range to apply [Simple (Limitation)] to by specifying [Parallel Interface: Simple], [USB: Simple], and the client's IPv4 address.

#### Printer Job Types

 In the RPCS printer driver dialog box, the "Confirm authentication information when printing" and "Encrypt" check boxes are selected. In the PCL printer driver dialog box, the "User Authentication" and "Encrypt" check boxes are selected. Personal authentication information is added to the printer job. The printer driver applies advanced encryption to the login passwords. The printer driver encryption key enables driver encryption and prevents the login password from being stolen.

For details about prohibiting the use of simple encryption using "Restrict Use of Simple Encryption", see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

2. In the RPCS printer driver dialog box, the "Confirm authentication information when printing" check box is selected. In the PCL printer driver dialog box, the "User Authentication" and "Encrypt" check boxes are selected. Personal authentication information is added to the printer job. The printer driver applies simple encryption to login passwords.

For details about turning off "Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" and allowing the use of simple encryption, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

- In the RPCS printer driver dialog box, the "Confirm authentication information when printing" check box is not selected. In the PCL printer driver dialog box, the "User Authentication" check box is not selected. Personal authentication information is added to the printer job and is disabled.
- 4. When using the PostScript 3 printer driver, the printer job contains user code information. Personal authentication information is not added to the printer job but the user code information is. This also applies to recovery/parallel printing using an RPCS/PCL printer driver that does not support authentication.
- 5. When using the PostScript 3 printer driver, the printer job does not contain user code information. Neither personal authentication information nor user code information is added to the printer job. This also applies to recovery/parallel printing using an RPCS/PCL printer driver that does not support authentication.
- 6. A printer job or PDF file is sent from a host computer without a printer driver and is printed via LPR. Personal authentication information is not added to the printer job.

7. A PDF file is printed via ftp. Personal authentication is performed using the user ID and password used for logging on via ftp. However, the user ID and password are not encrypted.

## Reference

• p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"

# If User Authentication is Specified

When user authentication (User Code Authentication, Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication) is set, the authentication screen is displayed. Unless a valid user name and password are entered, operations are not possible with the machine. Log on to operate the machine, and log off when you are finished operations. Be sure to log off to prevent unauthorized users from using the machine. When auto logout timer is specified, the machine automatically logs you off if you do not use the control panel within a given time. Additionally, you can authenticate using an external device. For details about using an external device for user authentication, see "Authentication Using an External Device".

#### Note

- Consult the User Administrator about your login user name, password, and user code.
- For user code authentication, enter a number registered in the Address Book as [User Code].

#### Reference

• p.100 "Authentication Using an External Device"

#### User Code Authentication (Using the Control Panel)

When User Code authentication is set, the following screen appears.

To use the following function(s code with the Number keys, th	
Scanner	Clear
	ОК

Enter a user code (up to 8 digits), and then press the [OK] key.

#### **Vote**

- To log off, do one of the following:
  - Press the Operation switch.
  - Press the [Energy Saver] key after jobs are completed.
  - Press the [Clear/Stop] key and the [Reset] key at the same time.

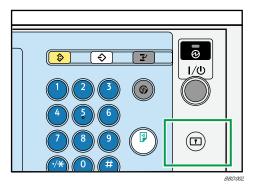
# User Code Authentication (Using a Printer Driver)

When User Code authentication is set, you can specify a user code in printer properties on the printer driver. For details, see the printer driver Help.

# Login (Using the Control Panel)

Use the following procedure to log in when Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication is enabled.

1. Press the [Login/Logout] key.



2. Press [Login].



3. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].



4. Enter the login password, and then press [OK].

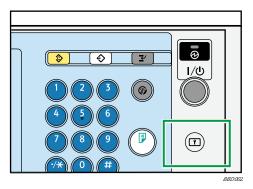
Login Password
Enter the login password, then press [OK].
- 0/128
<u>` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</u>
q w e r t y u
a s d f g h j
z x c v b n m

The message, "Authenticating... Please wait." appears.

# Log Off (Using the Control Panel)

Follow the procedure below to log off when Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is set.

1. Press the [Login/Logout] key.



2

2. Press [Yes].

	<del>og out.</del>	iry
(	Yes	
System Status	Job List	14 JUN 2007 10:59

#### Note

- You can log off using the following procedures also.
  - Press the [Power] key.
  - Press the [Energy Saver] key.

## Login (Using a Printer Driver)

When Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is set, make encryption settings in printer properties on the printer driver, and then specify a login user name and password. For details, see the printer driver Help.

🕗 Note 📃

• When logged on using a printer driver, logging off is not required.

## Login (Using Web Image Monitor)

This section explains how to log on to the machine via Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Click [Login] on the top page of the Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Enter a login user name and password, and then click [Login].

#### Note

- For user code authentication, enter a user code in "User Name", and then click [Login].
- The procedure may differ depending on the Web Image Monitor used.

# Log Off (Using Web Image Monitor)

1. Click [Logout] to log off.

#### **Vote**

• Delete the cache memory in the Web Image Monitor after logging off.

# **User Lockout Function**

If an incorrect password is entered several times, the User Lockout function prevents further login attempts under the same user name. Even if the locked out user enters the correct password later, authentication will fail and the machine cannot be used until the lockout period elapses or an administrator or supervisor disables the lockout.

To use the lockout function for user authentication, the authentication method must be set to Basic authentication. Under other authentication methods, the lockout function protects supervisor and administrator accounts only, not general user accounts.

#### Lockout setting items

The lockout function settings can be made using Web Image Monitor.

Setting Item	Description	Setting Values	Default Setting
Lockout	Specify whether or not to enable the lockout function.	<ul><li>Active</li><li>Inactive</li></ul>	• Inactive
Number of Attempts Before Lockout	Specify the number of authentication attempts to allow before applying lockout.	1-10	5
Lockout Release Timer	Specify whether or not to cancel lockout after a specified period elapses.	<ul><li>Active</li><li>Inactive</li></ul>	• Inactive
Lock Out User for	Specify the number of minutes after which lockout is canceled.	1-9999 min.	60 min.

#### Lockout release privileges

Administrators with unlocking privileges are as follows.

	Locked out User	Unlocking administrator
ę	general user	user administrator

Locked out User	Unlocking administrator
user administrator, network administrator, file administrator, machine administrator	supervisor
supervisor	machine administrator

#### Specifying the User Lockout Function

This can be specified by the machine administrator using Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The machine administrator can log on. Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [User Lockout Policy] under "Security".

The User Lockout Policy page appears.

- 5. Set "Lockout" to [Active].
- 6. In the drop down menu, select the number of login attempts to permit before applying lockout.
- 7. Set the "Lockout Release Timer" to [Active].
- 8. In the "Lock Out User for" field, enter the number of minutes until lockout is disabled.
- 9. Click [OK].

User Lockout Policy is set.

- 10. Click [OK].
- 11. Click [Logout].

#### Unlocking a Locked User Account

A locked user account can be unlocked by the administrator or supervisor with unlocking privileges using Web Image Monitor.

1. Open a Web browser.

2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The administrator or supervisor with unlocking privileges can log on. Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Address Book].

The Address Book page appears.

- 5. Select the locked out user account.
- 6. Click [Change].
- 7. Select the "Cancel Lockout" check box under "Authentication Information".
- 8. Click [OK].
- 9. Click [Logout].

#### Auto Logout

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

When using user authentication management, the machine automatically logs you off if you do not use the control panel within a given time. This feature is called "Auto Logout". Specify how long the machine is to wait before performing Auto Logout.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].

🚸 User Tools / Counter / Enquiry							
	System Settings		Copier / Document Features				
		8.	Facsimile Feat				
		<u></u>	Printer Featur				
ß	Maintenance		Scanner Featu				

### 3. Press [Timer Settings].

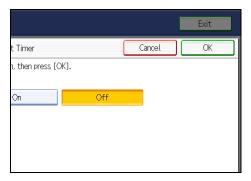
Settings	;				
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interfa Settir		ninis Toc	
hange / Delete User Text			Interleave Print		
ound	Off		Output: Copier		
eeper	On		Output: Document Server		
)isplay	Up		Output: Facsimile	,	
ority	Copier		Output: Printer		

4. Press [Auto Logout Timer].



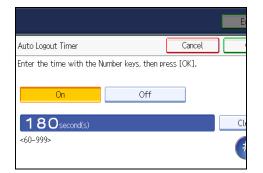
If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Select [On].



If you do not want to specify [Auto Logout Timer], select [Off].

6. Enter "60" to "999" (seconds) using the number keys, and then press [#].



7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# Authentication Using an External Device

To authenticate using an external device, see the device manual.

For details, contact your sales representative.

# 3. Ensuring Information Security

This chapter describes how to protect data that is stored on the machine and transmitted information from unauthorized viewing and modification.

# **Preventing Unauthorized Copying**

In Printer Features, using the printer driver, you can embed a pattern in the printed copy to discourage or prevent unauthorized copying.

The unauthorized copy prevention function prevents unauthorized copies of documents by embedding a text pattern (for instance, a warning such as "No Copying") that you can set on the print driver (which will appear on printed copies).

Data security for copying prevents document information leaks by graying out copies of documents that were printed with the data security for copying pattern enabled in the printer driver.

However, in order to gray out the security pattern, the Copy Data Security Unit is required for the copier or multi-function printer.

For more information, see the information below.

#### **Unauthorized Copy Prevention**

Using the printer driver, specify the printer settings for unauthorized copy prevention. For details
on how to specify settings for unauthorized copy prevention, see "Specifying Printer Settings for
Unauthorized Copy Prevention (Printer Driver Setting)".

#### Data Security for Copying

- Using the printer driver, specify the printer settings for data security for copying. For details on how to specify settings on the printer driver, see "Specifying Printer Settings for Data Security for Copying (Printer Driver Setting)".
- Set the data security for copying function to appear gray when documents with the function are copied, scanned, or stored on the machine. For details on how to specify settings on the machine, see "Specifying Data Security for Copying (Machine Setting)".

#### Reference

- p.105 "Specifying Printer Settings for Unauthorized Copy Prevention (Printer Driver Setting)"
- p.105 "Specifying Printer Settings for Data Security for Copying (Printer Driver Setting)"
- p.105 "Specifying Data Security for Copying (Machine Setting)"

## **Unauthorized Copy Prevention**

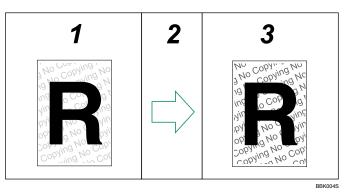
Using the printer driver, you can embed mask and pattern (for instance, a warning such as "No Copying") in the printed document.

If the document is copied, scanned, or stored in the Document Server by a copier or multifunction printer, the embedded pattern appears clearly on the copy, discouraging unauthorized copying.

To use the printer function when User Authentication is enabled, you must enter the login user name and password for the printer driver. For details, see the printer driver Help.

🔁 Important

- Unauthorized copy prevention discourages unauthorized copying, but will not necessarily stop information leaks.
- The embedded pattern cannot be guaranteed to be copied, scanned, or stored properly in the Document Server.
- Depending on the machine and scanner settings, the embedded pattern may not be copied, scanned, or stored in the Document Server.



#### 1. Printed Documents

Using the printer driver, you can embed background images and pattern in a printed document for Unauthorized Copy Prevention.

2. The document is copied, scanned, or stored in the Document Server.

#### 3. Printed Copies

The embedded pattern (for instance, a warning such as "No Copying") in a printed document appears clearly in printed copies.

#### **Note**

 To make the embedded pattern clear, set the character size to at least 50 pt (preferably 70 to 80 pt) and character angle to between 30 and 40 degrees.

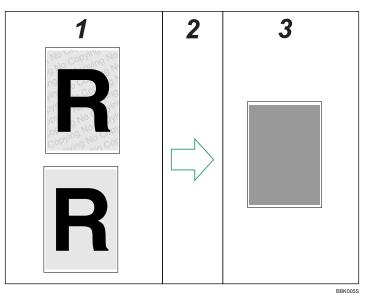
#### Data Security for Copying

Using the printer driver to enable the data security for copying function, you can print a document with an embedded pattern of hidden text. Such a document is called a data security for copying document.

If a data security for copying document is copied or stored in the Document Server using a copier or multifunction printer with the Copy Data Security Unit, protected pages are grayed out in the copy, preventing confidential information from being copied. Also if a document with embedded pattern is detected, the machine beeps. An unauthorized copy log is also stored. To gray out copies of data security for copying documents when they are copied or stored in the Document Server, the optional Copy Data Security Unit must be installed in the machine.

#### 🔂 Important

- If the Copy Data Security Unit is installed, when you specify a scaling factor less than 50% using the Control Panel under the Copier and Document Server functions, the Data Security for Copying function is unavailable.
- If a document with embedded pattern for data security for copying is copied, or stored in the Document Server by a copier or multi-function printer without the Copy Data Security Unit, the embedded pattern appears conspicuously in the copy. However, character relief may differ depending on the copier or multifunction printer model in use or document scan setting.
- The machine does not beep with a data security for copying document is detected while using the network TWAIN scanner.



- 1. Documents with data security for copying
- 2. The document is copied or stored in the Document Server.
- 3. Printed Copies

Text and images in the document are grayed out in printed copies.

• You can also embed pattern in a document protected by data security for copying. However, if such a document is copied or stored in the Document Server using a copier or multi-function printer with the Copy Data Security Unit, the copy is grayed out, so the embedded pattern does not appear on the copy.

**Vote** 

- If misdetection occurs, contact your service representative.
- If a document with embedded pattern for data security for copying is copied, scanned, or stored in the Document Server using a copier or multi-function printer without the Copy Data Security Unit, the embedded pattern appears clearly on the copy.
- If a data security for copying document is detected, the machine beeps.
- If the scanned data security for copying document is registered as a user stamp, the machine does
  not beep. The file registered as a user stamp is grayed out, and no entry is added to the unauthorized
  copying log.

#### **Printing Limitations**

The following is a list of limitations on printing with unauthorized copy prevention and data security for copying.

#### Unauthorized copy prevention / Data security for copying

You can print using only the RPCS printer driver.

You cannot print at 200 dpi resolution.

You cannot partially embed pattern in the printed document.

You can only embed pattern that is entered in the text box of the printer driver.

Printing with embedding takes longer than normal printing.

#### Data security for copying Only

Select 182 × 257 mm / 7.2 × 10.1 inches or larger as the paper size.

Select a paper type of Plain or Recycled with a brightness of 70% or more.

If you select Duplex, the data security for copying function may not work properly due to printing on the back of sheets.

#### Notice

- The supplier does not guarantee that unauthorized copy prevention and data security for copying will always work. Depending on the paper, the model of the copier or multi-function printer, and the copier or printer settings, unauthorized copy prevention and data security for copying may not work properly.
- 2. The supplier is not liable for any damage caused by using or not being able to use unauthorized copy prevention and data security for copying.

## Printing with Unauthorized Copy Prevention and Data Security for Copying

This section describes Printing with Unauthorized Copy Prevention and Data Security for Copying.

#### Specifying Printer Settings for Unauthorized Copy Prevention (Printer Driver Setting)

Using the printer driver, specify the printer settings for unauthorized copy prevention.

To use the printer function when User Authentication is enabled, you must enter the login user name and password for the printer driver. For details about logging in, see the printer driver Help.

For details about specifying data security for copying using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

- 1. Open the printer driver dialog box.
- 2. On the Edit tab, select the "Unauthorized copy..." check box.
- 3. Click [Control Settings...].
- 4. In the text box in the [Unauthorized copy prevention: Pattern] group, enter the text to be embedded in the printed document.

Also, specify [Font:], [Font style:], and Size.

5. Click [OK].

#### Specifying Printer Settings for Data Security for Copying (Printer Driver Setting)

If a printed document using this function is copied or stored in the Document Server by a copier or multifunction printer, the copy is grayed out.

Using the printer driver, specify the printer settings for data security for copying.

To use the printer function when User Authentication is enabled, you must enter the login user name and password for the printer driver. For details about logging in, see the printer driver Help.

For details about specifying data security for copying using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

- 1. Open the printer driver dialog box.
- 2. On the Edit tab, select the "Unauthorized copy..." check box.
- 3. Click [Control Settings...].
- 4. In the [Unauthorized copy prevention: Pattern] group, check the [Data security for copying] check box.
- 5. Click [OK].

#### Specifying Data Security for Copying (Machine Setting)

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

To use this function, the Copy Data Security Unit must be installed.

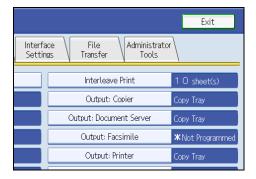
If a printed document is copied or stored in the Document Server, the copy is grayed out.

🚼 Important 🔵

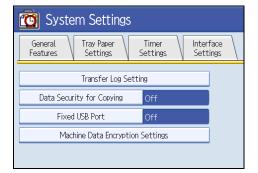
- If a document that is not copy-guarded is copied or stored, the copy or stored file is not grayed out.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

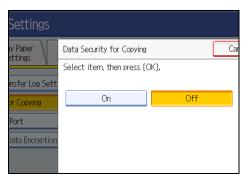


4. Press [Data Security for Copying].



If the setting you want to specify does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Press [On].



If you do not want to specify "Data Security for Copying", select [Off].

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press [Exit].
- 8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

107

3

# **Printing a Confidential Document**

Depending on the location of the machine, it is difficult to prevent unauthorized persons from viewing prints lying in the machine's output trays. When printing confidential documents, use the Locked Print function.

#### Locked Print

- Using the printer's Locked Print function, store files in the machine as Locked Print files and then print them from the control panel and retrieve them immediately, preventing others from viewing them.
- Confidential documents can be printed regardless of the User Authentication settings.

#### • Note

• To store files temporarily, select [Stored Print] in the printer driver. If you select [Share stored print files], you can also share these files.

# **Specifying a Locked Print File**

Using the printer driver, specify a Locked Print File. You can also encrypt passwords for Lock Print files using the printer driver.

If user authentication has been enabled, you must enter the login user name and login password using the printer driver. For details about logging on, see the printer driver Help.

Word Pad is used in this procedure.

- 1. Open the printer driver dialog box.
- 2. Set "Job type" to [Locked Print] under the "Printer Settings" tab.
- 3. Click [Details...].
- 4. Enter the user ID and password.

Enter the user ID using up to 8 alphanumeric characters.

Enter the password using 4 to 8 numbers.

The password entered here lets you use the Locked Print function.

To print a Locked Print file, enter the same password on the control panel.

The password is encrypted during data transmission.

5. Click [OK].

A confirmation message appears.

- 6. Confirm the password by re-entering it.
- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Print the locked document.

# Printing a Locked Print File

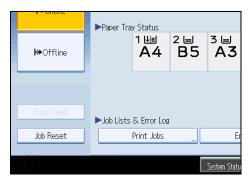
To print a Locked Print file, you must be at the machine and print the file using the control panel.

To print Locked Print files, the password is required. If you do not enter the correct password, you cannot print the files. The file administrator can change the user password if it is forgotten.

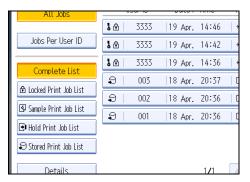
For details about logging on and logging off with user authentication, see "If User Authentication is Specified".

This can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

- 1. Press the [Printer] key.
- 2. Press [Print Jobs].



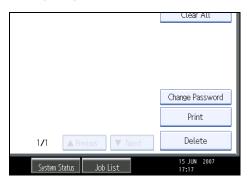
3. Press [Locked Print Job List].



Only Locked Print files belonging to the user who has logged on appear.

4. Select the Locked Print file to print.

5. Press [Print].



- 3
- 6. Enter the password for the stored file, and then press [OK].

Q	Enter the password with t then press [OK].	he Nu	mber
			Clea
	Cancel		Oł

Enter the password specified in step 4 of "Specifying a Locked Print File".

7. Press [Yes].

# Reference

• p.91 "If User Authentication is Specified"

# **Deleting Locked Print Files**

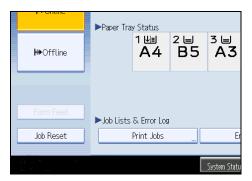
This can be specified by the file creator (owner).

To delete Locked Print files, you must enter the password for the files. If the password has been forgotten, ask the file administrator to change the password.

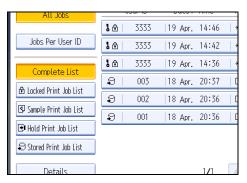
This can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

1. Press the [Printer] key.

2. Press [Print Jobs].



3. Press [Locked Print Job List].



- 4. Select the file.
- 5. Press [Delete].



The password entry screen does not appear if the file administrator is logged in.

6. Enter the password of the Locked Print file, and then press [OK].

Q	Enter the password wit then press [OK].	h the Number
		Clea
	Cancel	ŀO

7. Press [Yes].

Note

• Locked Print files can also be deleted by the file administrator.

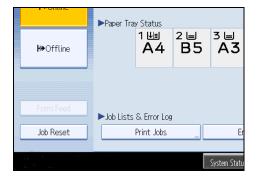
# **Changing Passwords of Locked Print Files**

This can be specified by the file creator (owner) or file administrator.

If the password has been forgotten, the file administrator changes the password to restore access.

This can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

- 1. Press the [Printer] key.
- 2. Press [Print Jobs].



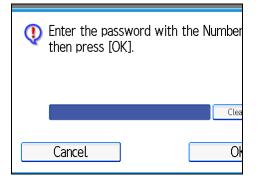
3. Press [Locked Print Job List].

All Jobs		0001 10			
	10	3333	19 Apr.	14:46	) >
Jobs Per User ID	10	3333	19 Apr.	14:42	*
Complete List	10	3333	19 Apr.	14:36	>
Complete List	9	003	18 Apr.	20:37	I F
🔂 Locked Print Job List					
	9	002	18 Apr.	20:36	[
🛾 Sample Print Job List	9	001	18 Apr.	20:36	
🕒 Hold Print Job List					
€ Stored Print Job List					
					_
Details				1/1	

- 4. Select the file.
- 5. Press [Change Password].

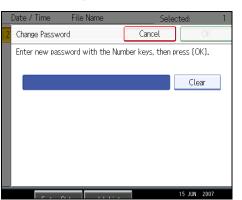


6. Enter the password for the stored file, and then press [OK].



The password entry screen does not appear if the file administrator is logged in.

7. Enter the new password for the stored file, and then press [OK].



8. If a password reentry screen appears, enter the login password, and then press [OK].

# **Unlocking Locked Print Files**

If you specify [On] for "Enhance File Protection", the file will be locked and become inaccessible if an invalid password is entered ten times. This section explains how to unlock files.

"Enhance File Protection" is one of the extended security functions. For details about this and other extended security functions, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

Only the file administrator can unlock files. For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

This can also be specified via Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

- 1. Press the [Printer] key.
- 2. Press [Print Jobs].



3. Press [Locked Print Job List].

All Jobs		0.001 10	buco.		
	10	3333	19 Apr.	14:46	*
Jobs Per User ID	10	3333	19 Apr.	14:42	*
Complete List	10	3333	19 Apr.	14:36	»
Complete List	9	003	18 Apr.	20:37	[
🔂 Locked Print Job List					
	9	002	18 Apr.	20:36	[
🛿 Sample Print Job List	9	001	18 Apr.	20:36	[
🕒 Hold Print Job List	•2	001	Tro Apr.	20.30	
🕄 Stored Print Job List					
					_
Details				1/1	

- 4. Select the file.
- 5. Press [Unlock File].

Apr.	14:42	****	Clear All
Apr.	14:36	****	
			Unlock File
			Change Password
	171	A Previous V Next	Delete
	System S	itatus Job List	9 JUN 2007 12:49

6. Press [Yes].



• You can use the same procedure to unlock stored print files also.

# 

- p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"
- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files**

This section describes Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files.

You can specify who is allowed to access stored scan files and files stored in the Document Server.

This can prevent activities such as printing or sending of stored files by unauthorized users.

You can also specify which users can change or delete stored files.

#### **Access Permission**

To limit the use of stored files, you can specify four types of access permissions.

Read-only	In addition to checking the content of and information about stored files, you can also print and send the files.
Edit	You can change the print settings for stored files. This includes permission to view files.
Edit / Delete	You can delete stored files. This includes permission to view and edit files.
Full Control	You can specify the user and access permission. This includes permission to view, edit, and edit / delete files.

## Vote

- Files can be stored by any user who is allowed to use the Document Server, copy function, scanner function, or fax function.
- Using Web Image Monitor, you can check the content of stored files. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- Access permission to documents sent from the printer driver and stored on the machine can only be set on Web Image Monitor.
- The default access permission for the file creator (owner) is "Read-only". You can also specify the access permission.

## **Password for Stored Files**

- Passwords for stored files can be specified by the file creator (owner) or file administrator.
- You can obtain greater protection against the unauthorized use of files.
- Even if User Authentication is not set, passwords for stored files can be set.

# Assigning Users and Access Permission for Stored Files

This can be specified by the file creator (owner) or file administrator.

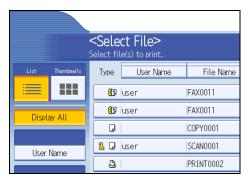
Specify the users and their access permissions for each stored file.

By making this setting, only users granted access permission can access stored files.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

#### 🔁 Important

- If files become inaccessible, reset their access permission as the file creator (owner). This can also be done by the file administrator. If you want to access a file but do not have access permission, ask the file creator (owner).
- 1. Press the [Document Server] key.
- 2. Select the file.



3. Press [File Management].

File Name	Date Page Order	Memory: 99%
FAX0011	Jun. 07   1	Details
FAX0011	Jun. 07   1	Preview
COPY0001	Jun. 07   1  1	File Management "
SCAN0001	Jan. 09   1	Delete File
PRINT0002	Jan. 09   6	Print Specified Page
11111	Jan. 09   3	1/1
PRINT0001	Jan. 09 3	
		To Printing Scroon

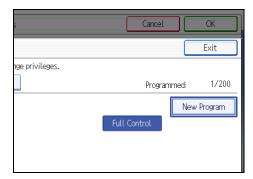
4. Press [Change Access Priv.].

File Name	Date P	age Order	File Information
FAX0011	Jun. 07	1	
FAX0011	Jun. 07	1	]
COPY0001	Jun. 07	1 1	Change Access Priv.
SCAN0001	Jan. 09	1	COPY0001
PRINT0002	Jan. 09	6	Change File Name
11111	Jan. 09	3	Change Password
PRINT0001	Jan. 09	3	

5. Press [Program/Change/Delete].

elete: File Acce	lete: File Access Privileges			
	(NONAME)	Cha		
ers/Groups	Program/Change/Delete			

6. Press [New Program].



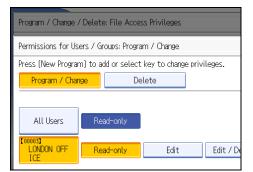
7. Select the users or groups you want to assign permission to.

You can select more than one user.

By pressing [All Users], you can select all the users.

8. Press [Exit].

9. Select the user who you want to assign access permission to, and then select the permission.



Select the access permission from [Read-only], [Edit], [Edit / Delete], or [Full Control].

- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Press [OK].

Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# Specifying Access Privileges for Files Stored using the Scanner and Fax Functions

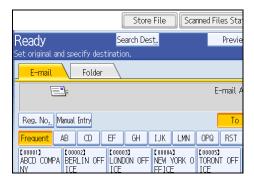
If user authentication is set for the scanner function, you can specify access privileges for stored files when storing them in the Document Server. You can also change the access privileges for the file.

## Specifying Access Privileges When Storing Files

This section explains how to specify the access privileges and then store a file in the Document Server under the scanner or fax function.

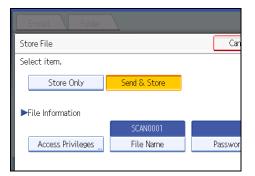
The scanner screen is used to illustrate the procedure.

1. Press [Store File].

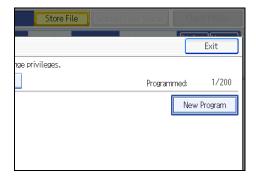


3

#### 2. Press [Access Privileges].



3. Press [New Program].



4. Select the users or groups you want to assign permission to.

You can select more than one user.

By pressing [All Users], you can select all the users.

5. Press [Exit].

Select the user who you want to assign access permission to, and then select the permission.

Select the access permission from [Read-only], [Edit], [Edit / Delete], or [Full Control].

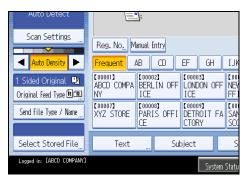
- 6. Press [Exit].
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Store files in the Document Server.

# **Changing Access Privileges for Previously Stored Files**

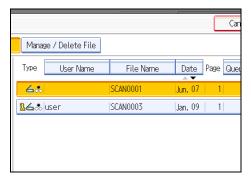
This section explains how to change access privileges for a file stored in the Document Server under the scanner or fax function.

The scanner screen is used to illustrate the procedure.

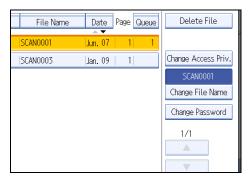
1. Press [Select Stored File].



- 2. Select the file.
- 3. Press [Manage / Delete File].



4. Press [Change Access Priv.].



5. Press [Program/Change/Delete].

elete: File Acce	elete: File Access Privileges			
	(NONAME)	Cha		
ers/Groups	Program/Change/Delete			

6. Press [New Program].



7. Select the users or groups you want to assign permission to.

							Regist	ration	No.
							Se	earch	
	All Use	ers							
Freque	nt A	AB CD		EF	GH	IJĸ	LMN	OPQ	F
[00001] ABCD ( NY	COMPA	【00002】 BERLIN ICE		COODO LOND ICE	3) ON OFF	Coood NEW FFIC	YORK O	COODOS TORON ICE	
[00007] XYZ S	TORE	[00008] PARIS O CE	FFI	COODO DETR CTOR	ÕIT FA	[ 0001 SAN SCO	FRANCI	【00011 L.A. RY	
Logged in: Us	er Admin	ISURATOR						System S	Statu

You can select more than one user.

By pressing [All Users], you can select all the users.

8. Press [Exit].

Select the user who you want to assign access permission to, and then select the permission.

Select the access permission from [Read-only], [Edit], [Edit / Delete], or [Full Control].

- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press [OK].

# Assigning the User and the Access Permission for the User's Stored Files

This can be specified by the file creator (owner) or user administrator.

Specify the users and their access permission to files stored by a particular user.

Only those users granted access permission can access stored files.

This makes managing access permission easier than specifying and managing access permissions for each stored file.

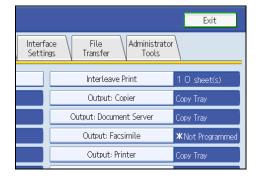
For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".



- If files become inaccessible, be sure to enable the user administrator, so that the user administrator can reset the access permission for the files in question.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



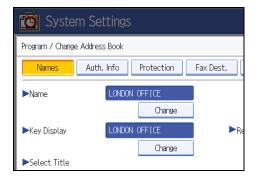
4. Press [Address Book Management].

# General Tray Paper Timer Interface Features Tray Paper Settings Settings Address Book Management Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group Address Book: Change Order Print Address Book: Destination List Address Book: Edit Title Address Book: Edit Title

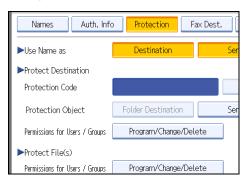
# 5. Select the user or group.

Press [New Program] to add new or select from list below to edit. Selection can b						
Program /	Change	Delete				
All Users			Fax	E-mail		
Frequent	AB CD	EF GH	IJK LMN	OPQ RS		
[00021] USET	【00003】 BERLIN OFF ICE	【00004】 LONDON OFF ICE	[00005] NEW YORK O FFICE	[00006] TORONTO O FICE		
[00008] DETROIT FA CTORY	[00011] LOS ANGELE S FACT	[00001] ABCD COMPA NY	[00009] SAN FRANCI SCO OF	(00010) SYDNEY OF ICE		

6. Press [Protection].

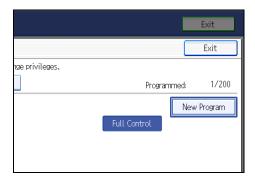


 Under "Protect File(s)", press [Program/Change/Delete] for "Permissions for Users/ Groups".



If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [VNext] to scroll down to other settings.

8. Press [New Program].



9. Select the users or groups to register.

				Regist	ration No.
				Se	earch ,
All Use	ers				
Frequent	AB CD	EF GH	IJK	LMN	OPQ F
[00001] ABCD COMPA NY	[00002] BERLIN OFF ICE	[00003] LONDON OFF ICE	【00004 NEW FFIC	YORK O	[00005] TORONT ( ICE
(00007) XYZ STORE	【00008】 PARIS OFFI CE	[00009] DETROIT FA CTORY	[ 00011 SAN SCO	FRANCI	[00011] L.A. FAG RY
Logged in: User Admir	istrator				System Statu

You can select more than one user.

By pressing [All Users], you can select all the users.

- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Select the user who you want to assign access permission to, and then select the permission. Select the access permission from [Read-only], [Edit], [Edit / Delete], or [Full Control].
- 12. Press [Exit].

- 13. Press [OK].
- 14. Press [Exit].
- 15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Specifying Passwords for Stored Files**

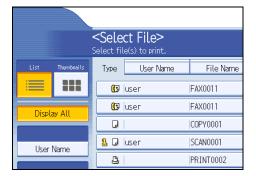
This can be specified by the file creator (owner) or file administrator.

Specify passwords for stored files.

This provides increased protection against unauthorized use of files.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

- 1. Press the [Document Server] key.
- 2. Select the file.



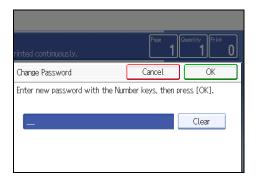
3. Press [File Management].

File Name	Date Page Order	Memory: 99%
FAX0011	Jun. 07   1	Details
FAX0011	Jun. 07   1	Preview
COPY0001	Jun. 07   1  1	File Management "
SCAN0001	Jan. 09   1	Delete File
PRINT0002	Jan. 09   6	Print Specified Page
11111	Jan. 09   3	1/1
PRINT0001	Jan. 09   3	
		To Printing Scroon

Date	Page	Order	File Information
Jun. 07	1		ОК
Jun. 07	1		
Jun. 07	1		Change Access Priv.
Jan. 09	1	1	
Jan. 09	6		Unlock Files
Jan. 09	3		Change Password
Jan. 09	3		
	Jun. 07 Jun. 07 Jun. 07 Jun. 09 Jan. 09 Jan. 09	Jun. 07         1           Jun. 07         1           Jun. 07         1           Jun. 07         1           Jun. 09         1           Jan. 09         6           Jan. 09         3	Jun. 07         1           Jun. 07         1           Jun. 07         1           Jan. 09         1           Jan. 09         6           Jan. 09         3

# 4. Press [Change Password].

5. Enter the password using the number keys.



You can use 4 to 8 numbers as the password for the stored file.

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Confirm the password by re-entering it using the number keys.
- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Press [OK].

## Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Unlocking Files**

If you specify "Enhance File Protection", the file will be locked and become inaccessible if an invalid password is entered ten times. This section explains how to unlock files.

"Enhance File Protection" is one of the extended security functions. For details about this and other extended security functions, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

Only the file administrator can unlock files. For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

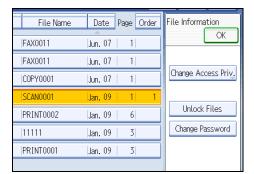
- 1. Press the [Document Server] key.
- 2. Select the file.

List	Thumbnails	Туре	User Name	File Name	
		07	user	FAX0011	
Display All		(C)	user	FAX0011	
		J		COPY0001	
User Name		🔕 🖵	user	SCAN0001	
038	INGINE	8		PRINT0002	

3. Press [File Management].

File Name	Date Page Order	Memory: 99%
FAX0011	Jun. 07   1	Details
FAX0011	Jun. 07   1	Preview
COPY0001	Jun. 07   1  1	File Management "
SCAN0001	Jan. 09   1	Delete File
PRINT0002	Jan. 09   6	Print Specified Page
11111	Jan. 09   3	1/1
PRINT0001	Jan. 09   3	
		To Printing Scroop

4. Press [Unlock Files].



- 5. Press [Yes].
- 6. Press [OK].

# Reference

• p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission

This section describes Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission.

If user authentication is specified, the user who has logged on will be designated as the sender to prevent data from being sent by an unauthorized person masquerading as the user.

You can also limit the direct entry of destinations to prevent files from being sent to destinations not registered in the Address Book.

# **Restrictions on Destinations**

This can be specified by the user administrator.

Make the setting to disable the direct entry of e-mail addresses and phone numbers under the scanner and fax functions.

By making this setting, the destinations are restricted to addresses registered in the Address Book.

If you set "Restrict Use of Destinations" to [On], you can prohibit users from directly entering telephone numbers, e-mail addresses, or Folder Path in order to send files. If you set "Restrict Use of Destinations" to [Off], "Restrict Adding of User Destinations" appears. In "Restrict Adding of User Destinations", you can restrict users from registering data in the Address Book.

If you set "Restrict Adding of User Destinations" to [Off], users can directly enter destination telephone numbers, e-mail addresses, and Folder Path in "Program Dest." on the fax and scanner screens. If you set "Restrict Adding of User Destinations" to [On], users can specify destinations directly, but cannot use "Program Dest." to register data in the Address Book. When this setting is made, only the user administrator can change the Address Book.

"Restrict Use of Destinations" and "Restrict Adding of User Destinations" are extended security functions. For more information about these and other extended security functions, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions". "Restrictions on Destinations" can also be specified using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin. For details, see the Help for these applications.

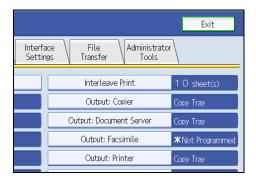
For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

## 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

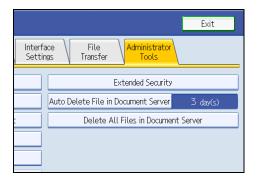
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Extended Security].



5. Press [On] for "Restrict Use of Destinations".

If "Restrict Use of Destinations" is set to [On], "Restrict Adding of User Destinations" does not appear.

			Exit	
	Cancel		OK	
►Restrict Use of Desti	nations			
On	Off			
►Restrict Adding of Use	er Destinations			
On	Off			

# 3

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# Reference

- p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"
- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission

By registering a user certificate in the Address Book, you can send e-mail that is encrypted with a public key which prevents its content from being altered during transmission. You can also prevent sender impersonation (spoofing) by installing a device certificate on the machine, and attaching an electronic signature created with a private key. You can apply these functions separately or, for stronger security, together.

To send encrypted e-mail, both the sender (this machine) and the receiver must support S/MIME.

For details about using S/MIME with the scanner function, see "Security Settings to E-mails", Scanner Reference.

For details about using S/MIME with the fax function, see "Internet Fax Functions" or "Sending to E-mail/ Folder Destinations", Facsimile Reference.

#### **Compatible Mailer Applications**

The S/MIME function can be used with the following applications:

- Microsoft Outlook 98 and later
- Microsoft Outlook Express 5.5 and later
- Netscape Messenger 7.1 and later
- Lotus Notes R5 and later

## **Vote**

- When the electronic signature is specified, the machine administrator's address appears in the "From" field and the address of the sender appears in the "Reply-to" field.
- When sending e-mail to users that support S/MIME and users that do not support S/MIME at the same time, the e-mail is separated into encrypted and unencrypted groups and then sent.
- When using S/MIME, the e-mail size is larger than normal.

## **Email Encryption**

To send encrypted e-mail using S/MIME, the user certificate must first be prepared using Web Image Monitor and registered in the Address Book by the user administrator. Registering the certificate in the Address Book specifies each user's public key. After installing the certificate, specify the encryption algorithm using Web Image Monitor. The network administrator can specify the algorithm.

#### **Email Encryption**

- 1. Prepare the user certificate.
- 2. Install the user certificate in the Address Book using Web Image Monitor. (The public key on the certificate is specified in the Address Book.)
- 3. Specify the encryption algorithm using Web Image Monitor.

- 4. Using the shared key, encrypt the e-mail message.
- 5. The shared key is encrypted using the user's public key.
- 6. The encrypted e-mail is sent.
- 7. The receiver decrypts the shared key using a secret key that corresponds to the public key.
- 8. The e-mail is decrypted using the shared key.

## Note

• There are three types of user certificates that can be installed on this machine, "DER encoded binary X.509", "Base 64 encoded X.509", and "PKCS #7 certificate".

#### Specifying the User Certificate

This can be specified by the user administrator. Each user certificate must be prepared in advance.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The user administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Address Book].

The Address Book page appears.

- Select the user for whom the certificate will be installed, and then click [Change]. The Change User Information screen appears.
- 6. Enter the user address in the "E-mail Address" field under "E-mail".
- 7. Click [Change] in "User Certificate".
- 8. Click [Browse], select the user certificate file, and then click [Open].
- 9. Click [OK].

The user certificate is installed.

- 10. Click [OK].
- 11. Click [Logout].

#### Specifying the Encryption Algorithm

This can be specified by the network administrator.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [S/MIME] under "Security".

The S/MIME settings page appears.

- Select the encryption algorithm from the drop down menu next to "Encryption Algorithm" under "Encryption".
- 6. Click [OK].

The algorithm for S/MIME is set.

- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Click [Logout].

# Attaching an Electronic Signature

To attach an electronic signature to sent e-mail, a device certificate must be installed in advance.

It is possible to use either a self-signed certificate created by the machine, or a certificate issued by a certificate authority.

#### **Electronic Signature**

- Install a device certificate on the machine. (The secret key on the certificate is configured on the machine.)
- 2. Attach the electronic signature to an e-mail using the secret key provided by the device certificate.
- 3. Send the e-mail with the electronic signature attached to the user.
- 4. The receiver requests the public key and device certificate from the machine.
- 5. Using the public key, you can determine the authenticity of the attached electronic signature to see if the message has been altered.

#### Configuration flow (self-signed certificate)

1. Creating and installing the device certificate.

Create and install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

2. Make certificate settings.

Make settings for the certificate to be used for S/MIME using Web Image Monitor.

3. Make electronic signature settings.

Make settings for the electronic signature using Web Image Monitor.

#### Configuration flow (certificate issued by a certificate authority)

1. Create the device certificate.

Create the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

The application procedure for a created certificate depends on the certificate authority. Follow the procedure specified by the certificate authority.

2. Install the device certificate.

Install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

3. Make certificate settings.

Make settings for the certificate to be used for S/MIME using Web Image Monitor.

4. Make electronic signature settings.

Make settings for the electronic signature using Web Image Monitor.

# Creating and Installing the Self-Signed Certificate

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Create and install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor. For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

This section explains the use of a self-signed certificate as the device certificate.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

- 4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".
- 5. Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to create.
- 6. Click [Create].
- 7. Make the necessary settings.
- 8. Click [OK].

The setting is changed.

9. Click [OK].

A security warning dialog box appears.

10. Check the details, and then click [OK].

"Installed" appears under Certificate Status to show that a device certificate for the printer has been installed.

11. Click [Logout].

• Note

• Click [Delete] to delete the device certificate from the machine.

# Creating the Device Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Create the device certificate using Web Image Monitor. For details about the displayed and selectable items and settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Use this procedure to create a device certificate issued by a certificate authority.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".

The Device Certificate page appears.

- 5. Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to request.
- 6. Click [Request].
- 7. Make the necessary settings.
- 8. Click [OK].

"Requesting" appears for Certificate Status in the "Certificates" area.

- 9. Click [Logout].
- 10. Apply to the certificate authority for the device certificate.

The application procedure depends on the certificate authority. For details, contact the certificate authority.

3

For application details, click the Web Image Monitor Details icon and use the information shown in "Certificate Details".

Vote

- The issuing location may not be displayed if you request two certificates at the same time. When you install a certificate, be sure to check the certificate destination and installation procedure.
- Using Web Image Monitor, you can create the contents of the device certificate but you cannot send the certificate application.
- Click [Cancel Request] to cancel the request for the device certificate.

## Installing the Device Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor. For details about displayed and selectable items and settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Use this procedure to install a server certificate issued by a certificate authority.

Enter the details of the device certificate issued by the certificate authority.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".

The Device Certificate page appears.

- 5. Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to install.
- 6. Click [Install].
- 7. Enter the details of the device certificate.

In the Certificate Request box, enter the details of the device certificate received from the certificate authority.

8. Click [OK].

"Installed" appears under [Certificate Status] to show that a device certificate for the machine has been installed.

9. Click [Logout].

# Selecting the Device certificate

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Select the device certificate to be used for S/MIME using Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can logon.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".

The Device Certificate page appears.

- Select the certificate to be used for the electronic signature from the drop down box in "S/ MIME" under "Certification".
- 6. Click [OK].

The certificate to be used for the S/MIME electronic signature is set.

- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Click [Logout].

# Specifying the Electronic Signature

This can be specified by the network administrator.

After installing the device certificate on the machine, configure the electronic signature using Web Image Monitor. The configuration procedure is the same regardless of whether you are using a self-signed certificate or a certificate issued by a certificate authority.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can logon. Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [S/MIME] under "Security".

The S/MIME settings page appears.

- Select the digest algorithm to be used in the electronic signature next to "Digest Algorithm" under "Signature".
- 6. Select the method for attaching the electronic signature when sending e-mail from the scanner next to "When Sending E-mail by Scanner" under "Signature".
- 7. Select the method for attaching the electronic signature when forwarding received fax messages in "When Transferring by Fax" under "Signature".
- 8. Select the method for attaching the electronic signature when forwarding stored documents next to "When Transferring Files Stored in Document Server (Utility)" under "Signature".
- 9. Click [OK].

The settings for the S/MIME electronic signature are enabled.

- 10. Click [OK].
- 11. Click [Logout].

#### Note

 If the machine does not support the scanner or fax functions, S/MIME will not appear on Web Image Monitor.

# **Protecting the Address Book**

If user authentication is specified, the user who has logged on will be designated as the sender to prevent data from being sent by an unauthorized person masquerading as the user.

To protect the data from unauthorized reading, you can also encrypt the data in the Address Book.

# Address Book Access Permission

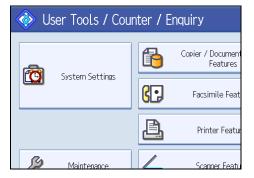
This can be specified by the registered user. Access permission can also be specified by a user granted full control or the user administrator.

You can specify who is allowed to access the data in the Address Book.

By making this setting, you can prevent the data in the Address Book being used by unregistered users.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

				Exit	
Interfac Setting		File Transfer	Administrator Tools		
		Interleave	Print	10 sheet(s)	
	Output: Copier Copy Tray				
	Output: Document Server Copy Tray				
	Output: Facsimile			stNot Programmed	
		Output: Pr	inter	Copy Tray	

3

4. Press [Address Book Management].

# General Tray Paper Timer Interface Features Tray Paper Settings Settings Address Book Management Interface Settings Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group Interface Address Book: Change Order Print Address Book: Destination List Address Book: Edit Title Interface Interface

#### 5. Select the user or group.

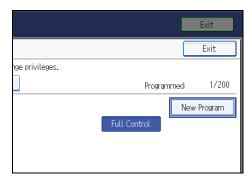
Press [New Program] to add new or select from list below to edit. Selection can b						
Program /	Program / Change					
All Users	All Users Fax E-mail					
Frequent	AB CD	EF GH	IJK LMN	OPQ RS		
[00021] User	【00003】 BERLIN OFF ICE	【00004】 LONDON OFF ICE	【00005】 NEW YORK O FFICE	[00006] TORONTO O FICE		
[00008] DETROIT FA CTORY	[00011] LOS ANGELE S FACT	[00001] ABCD COMPA NY	[00009] SAN FRANCI SCO OF	(00010) SYDNEY OF ICE		

6. Press [Protection].



7. Press [Program/Change/Delete] for "Permissions for Users/Groups" under "Protect Destination".

#### 8. Press [New Program].



9. Select the users or groups to register.

				Regist	ration No.
				Se	earch ,
	All Use	ers			
	Frequent 4	AB CD	EF GH	IJK LMN	OPQ F
	(00001) ABCD COMPA NY	【00002】 BERLIN OFF ICE	[00003] LONDON OFF ICE	【00004】 NEW YORK O FFICE	【00005】 TORONT ( ICE
	[00007] XYZ STORE	[00008] PARIS OFFI CE	[00009] DETROIT FA CTORY	[00010] SAN FRANCI SCO OF	[00011] L.A. FAG RY
Log	ged in: User Admin	istrator			System Statu

You can select more than one user.

By pressing [All Users], you can select all the users.

- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Select the user who you want to assign access permission to, and then select the permission.

🔯 System Settings					
Permissions for Users / Gr	Permissions for Users / Groups: Program / Change				
Press [New Program] to add or select key to change privileges.					
Program / Change Delete					
All Users Re [00003] LONDON OFF ICE	ad-only Edit				

Select the permission, from [Read-only], [Edit], [Edit / Delete], or [Full Control].

- 12. Press [Exit].
- 13. Press [OK].
- 14. Press [Exit].

15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Encrypting Data in the Address Book**

3

This can be specified by the user administrator.

You can encrypt the data in the Address Book using the extended security function, "Encrypt Address Book". For details about this and other extended security functions, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

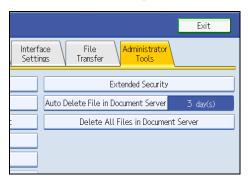
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interface Settings	File Administr Transfer Tools	
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier Copy Tray	
	Dutput: Document Server	Copy Tray
	Output: Facsimile X Not Progr	
	Output: Printer Copy Tray	

4. Press [Extended Security].



5. Press [On] for "Encrypt Address Book".

Select item.		
►Driver Encryption Key		►Restrict Use of
	Change	On
►Encrypt Address Book		►Restrict Adding
	Off	On
On	Uff	►Restrict Display
		On
		►Enhance File Pro
		On

6. Press [Change] for "Encryption Key".

►Driver Encryption Key		►Restrict Use of
	Change	On
►Encrypt Address Book		►Restrict Adding
On	Off	On
	UII	►Restrict Display
Encryption Key	Change	On
	Encrypt / Decrypt	►Enhance File Pro
		On
Logged in: Machine Administrato	or	System Statu

7. Enter the encryption key, and then press [OK].

Enter the encryption key using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

- 8. Press [Encrypt / Decrypt].
- 9. Press [Yes].

Do not switch the main power off during encryption, as doing so may corrupt the data.

Encrypting the data in the Address Book may take a long time.

The time it takes to encrypt the data in the Address Book depends on the number of registered users.

The machine cannot be used during encryption.

Normally, once encryption is complete, [Exit] appears.

If you press [Stop] during encryption, the data is not encrypted.

If you press [Stop] during decryption, the data stays encrypted.

- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Press [OK].
- 12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Note

• If you register additional users after encrypting the data in the Address Book, those users are also encrypted.

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"

# **Encrypting Data on the Hard Disk**

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

In order to use this function, the HDD Encryption Unit option is required.

Prevent information leakage by encrypting the Address Book, authentication information, and stored documents as the data is written. In addition, if the machine malfunctions or needs to be replaced, your service representative can easily transfer existing data to a new machine.

When the data encryption settings are enabled, an encryption key is generated and this is used to restore the data. This key can be changed at any time.

#### Data that is Encrypted

This function encrypts data that is stored in the machine's NVRAM (memory that remains even after the machine has been turned off) and on the Hard Disk.

The following data is encrypted:

- Address Book data
- User authentication information
- Data stored in the document box
- Temporary stored documents
- Logs
- Network I/F setting information
- System settings information

# **Enabling the Encryption Settings**

Use the following procedure to enable the encryption settings at initial set up, or after encryption settings have been canceled and settings must be made again.

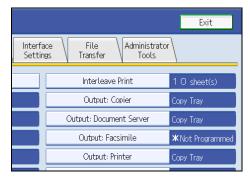
#### Comportant 🔁

- The encryption key is required for data recovery if the machine malfunctions. Be sure to store the encryption key safely for retrieving back-up data.
- After completing the procedure on the machine's control panel, turn off the power and restart the
  machine to enable the new settings. Restarting can be slow when there is data that needs to be carried
  over to the hard disk. When you specify both overwriting and encrypting data on the hard disk,
  encryption starts after the data is overwritten and the machine is turned off and on again. It can take
  up to 12 hours until both functions are completed.
- You can start the machine in less time by setting encryption to [Format All Data] but data will not be carried over to the hard disk and will be reset back to the default status, so make sure to back-up all necessary data beforehand.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

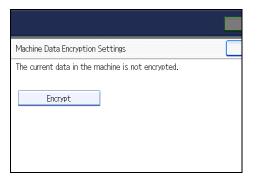


4. Press [Machine Data Encryption Settings].

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [VNext].

😰 System Settings			
	ner Interface tings Settings		
Transfer Log Setting			
Fixed USB Port Off			
Machine Data Encryption Settings			

## 5. Press [Encrypt].



6. Select the data to be carried over to the hard disk and not be reset.

To carry all of the data over to the hard disk, select [All Data]. To carry over only the machine settings data, select [File System Data Only]. To reset all of the data, select [Format All Data].

		1	
Machine Data Encryption Settin	gs: Carry Over / Format	[	
Carry over all data or file system data only (without formatting data.			
All Data	File System Data Only	Format	

7. Press the [Start] key.

The encryption key for back-up data is printed.



8. Press [OK].



- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 12. Turn off the power and the main power switch, and then turn the main power switch back on.

For details about turning off the power, see "Turning On the Power", About This Machine.

# Printing the Encryption Key

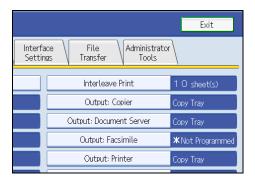
Use the following procedure to print the key again if it has been lost or misplaced.

🔂 Important

- The encryption key is required for data recovery if the machine malfunctions. Be sure to store the encryption key safely for retrieving back-up data.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

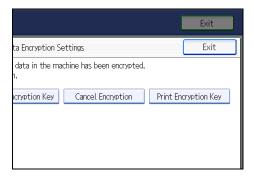


4. Press [Machine Data Encryption Settings].

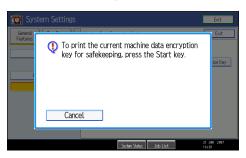
# System Settings General Tray Paper Features Settings Interface Settings Settings Settings Settings Fixed USB Port Off Machine Data Encryption Settings

5. Press [Print Encryption Key].

The encryption key for retrieving backup data is printed.



6. Press the [Start] key.



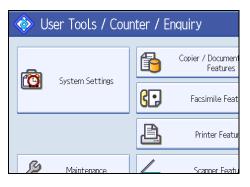
7. Press [Exit].

# Updating the Encryption Key

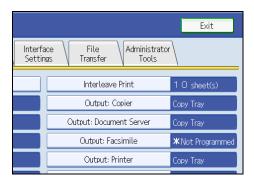
You can update the encryption key and create a new key. Updates are possible when the machine is functioning normally.

#### 🚼 Important

- The encryption key is required for recovery if the machine malfunctions. Be sure to store the encryption key safely for retrieving back-up data.
- When the encryption key is updated, encryption is performed using the new key. After completing the procedure on the machine's control panel, turn off the power and restart the machine to enable the new settings. Restarting can be slow when there is data to be carried over to the hard disk.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



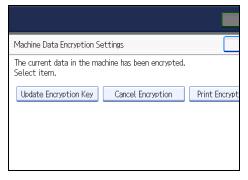
3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Machine Data Encryption Settings].

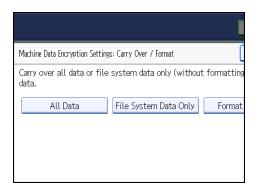
🔞 System Settings				
General Features	Tray Paper Settings	Timer Settings	Inter Sett	
Transfer Log Setting				
Fixed USB Port Off				
Machine Data Encryption Settings				

5. Press [Update Encryption Key].



6. Select the data to be carried over to the hard disk and not be reset.

To carry all of the data over to the hard disk, select [All Data]. To carry over only the machine settings data, select [File System Data Only]. To reset all of the data, select [Format All Data].



#### 7. Press the [Start] key.

The encryption key for retrieving the backup data is printed.



8. Press [OK].



- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 12. Turn off the power and the main power switch, and then turn the main power switch back on.

For details about turning off the power, see "Turning On the Power", About This Machine.

# **Canceling Data Encryption**

Use the following procedure to cancel the encryption settings when encryption is no longer necessary.

## 🔂 Important

- After completing this procedure on the machine's control panel, turn off the power and restart the machine to enable the new settings. Restarting can be slow when there is data to be carried over to the hard disk.
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



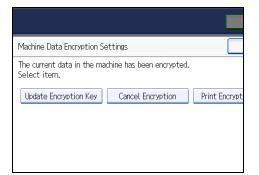
3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interface Settings	File Administrator Transfer Tools	-
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier	Copy Tray
	Output: Document Server Copy Tray	
	Output: Facsimile	stNot Programmed
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

4. Press [Machine Data Encryption Settings].

🔞 System Settings				
General Features	Tray Paper Settings	Timer Settings	Interface Settings	
Transfer Log Setting				
Fixed USB Port Off				
Machine Data Encryption Settings				

#### 5. Press [Cancel Encryption].

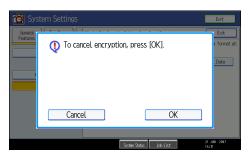


- 3
- 6. Select the data to be carried over to the hard disk and not be reset.

To carry all of the data over to the hard disk, select [All Data]. To carry over only the machine settings data, select [File System Data Only]. To reset all of the data, select [Format All Data].

Machine Data Encryption Setting	as: Carry Over / Format	
Carry over all data or file data.	system data only (without	t formatting),
All Data	File System Data Only	Format A

7. Press [OK].



- 8. Press [Exit].
- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- Turn off the power and the main power switch, and then turn the main power switch back on.

For details about turning off the power, see "Turning On the Power", About This Machine.

# **Deleting Data on the Hard Disk**

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

To use this function, the optional DataOverwriteSecurity Unit must be installed.

The machine's hard disk stores all document data from the copier, printer, fax, and scanner functions. It also stores the data of users' document boxes and code counters, and the Address Book.

#### Note

• Fax transmission data, fax numbers and network TWAIN scanner data are recorded in the memory installed on this machine. This information is not overwritten with the Hard Disk data.

## Overwriting Data on the Hard Disk

You can prevent data leakage by automatically overwriting temporarily saved data (Auto Erase Memory) or overwriting all the data stored on the hard disk (Erase All Memory).

For details, see the manual supplied with the DataOverwriteSecurity Unit.

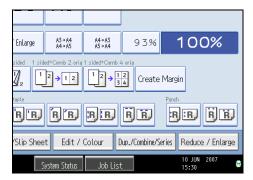
#### **Auto Erase Memory Setting**

To erase data on the hard disk by job type, specify [Auto Erase Memory Setting].

#### **Erase All Memory**

To erase all the data on the hard disk at once, specify [Erase All Memory].

#### **Overwrite Icon**



If the Data Overwrite icon is not displayed, first check if Auto Erase Memory has been set to Off. If the icon is not displayed even though Auto Erase Memory is On, contact your service representative.

8	Dirty	This icon is lit when there is temporary data to be overwritten, and blinks during overwriting.
---	-------	---

	Clear	This icon is lit when there is no temporary data to be overwritten.
--	-------	---

#### Note

- Depending on the amount of data and the erasure method, full erasure might take several hours.
- Once in progress, the Erase All Memory function can be paused, but not stopped. No other operations are possible until all data is erased.
- Data is erased by overwriting it with random numbers a specified number of times. You can specify that the data is overwritten up to three overwrites (the minimum is one). The default number of overwrites is three.
- Even if there is still hold print, stored print, confidential print, or test print data remaining on the hard disk, the "No Remaining Data" overwrite icon will be lit after erasure is completed.

### Auto Erase Memory Setting

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

A document scanned in copier, fax, or scanner mode, or print data sent from a printer driver is temporarily stored on the machine's hard disk. Even after the job is completed, it remains in the hard disk as temporary data. Auto Erase Memory erases the temporary data on the hard disk by writing over it.

Overwriting starts automatically once the job is completed.

The copier, fax, and printer functions take priority over the Auto Erase Memory function. If a copy, fax or print job is in progress, overwriting will only be done after the job is completed.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

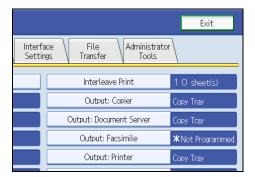
#### C Important

- When Auto Erase Memory is set to [On], temporary data that remained on the hard disk when Auto Erase Memory was set to [Off] might not be overwritten.
- If the main power switch is turned to [Off] before Auto Erase Memory is completed, overwriting will stop and data will be left on the hard disk.
- Do not stop the overwrite mid-process. Doing so will damage the hard disk.
- Should the main power switch be turned to [Off] before Auto Erase Memory is completed, overwriting will continue once the main power switch is turned back to [On].
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

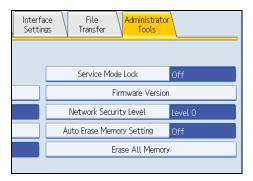
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

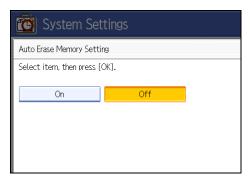


4. Press [Auto Erase Memory Setting].



If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Press [On].



6. Press [Change].

		Cancel	ОК
, then press	₩.		
	Change	Clear	#

Enter the number of times that you want to overwrite using the number keys, and then press
[#].

				Exit	
		Cancel		OK	
then press	⊕.				
	Change	Clear	#		
			-		

8. Press [OK].

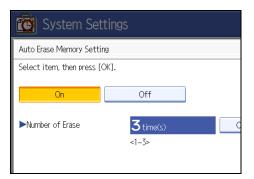
Auto Erase Memory is set.

Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Canceling Auto Erase Memory**

- 1. Follow steps 1 to 4 in "Auto Erase Memory Setting".
- 2. Press [Off].



#### 3. Press [OK].

Auto Erase Memory is disabled.

To set Auto Erase Memory to [On] again, repeat the procedure in "Auto Erase Memory Setting".

#### Types of Data that Can or Cannot Be Overwritten

The following table shows the types of data that can or cannot be overwritten by "Auto Erase Memory".

## Data overwritten by Auto Erase Memory

Copier	Copy jobs	
Printer	Print Jobs	
Printer	Sample Print / Locked Print / Stored Print Jobs * 1	
Printer	Spool Printing jobs	
Printer	PDF Direct Print data	
Fax *2	LAN fax print jobs	
Fax *2	Internet fax transmitted data	
Scanner *3	Scanned files sent by e-mail	
Scanner *3	Files sent by Scan to Folder	
Scanner *3	Documents sent using DeskTopBinder, the ScanRouter Delivery software or a Web Image Monitor	

#### Data not overwritten by Auto Erase Memory

Documents stored by the user in the Document Server using the Copier, Printer or Scanner functions \*1

Information registered in the Address Book \*5

Counters stored under each user code

Image overlay data \*6

- \*1 A Sample Print, Locked Print, or Stored Print job can only be overwritten after printing is completed. Stored print jobs can be overwritten by Auto Erase Memory only if they have been deleted in advance.
- \*2 The data for fax transmission and the registered fax numbers are stored in the memory. This data is not stored on the hard disk, so it will not be overwritten by Auto Erase Memory.
- \*3 Data scanned with network TWAIN scanner will not be overwritten by Auto Erase Memory.
- \*4 A stored document can only be overwritten after it has been printed or deleted from the Document Server.
- \*5 Data stored in the Address Book can be encrypted for security. For details, see "Protecting the Address Book".
- \*6 Image overlay data can be overwritten by Auto Erase Memory only if it is deleted in advance.

#### 🖪 Reference 🔵

p.141 "Protecting the Address Book"

#### Erase All Memory

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

You can erase all the data on the hard disk by writing over it. This is useful if you relocate or dispose of your machine.

#### 🔁 Important

- If you select "Erase All Memory", the following are also deleted: user codes, counters under each user code, user stamps, data stored in the Address Book, printer fonts downloaded by users, applications using Embedded Software Architecture, SSL server certificates, and the machine's network settings.
- If the main power switch is turned to [Off] before Auto Erase Memory is completed, overwriting will be stopped and data will be left on the hard disk.
- Do not stop the overwrite mid-process. Doing so will damage the hard disk.
- Should the main power switch be turned to [Off] before Auto Erase Memory is completed, overwriting
  will continue once the main power switch is turned back to [On].
- 1. Disconnect communication cables connected to the machine.
- 2. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

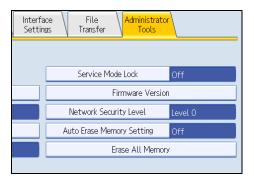
3. Press [System Settings].

🚸 User Tools / Counter / Enquiry			
			Copier / Document Features
	System Settings	6.	Facsimile Feat
		<u>B</u>	Printer Featur
ß	Maintenance		Scanner Featu

4. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interface Settings	File Administrate Transfer Tools	or
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier	Copy Tray
	Output: Document Server	Copy Tray
	Output: Facsimile	<b>≭</b> Not Programmed
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

5. Press [Erase All Memory].



If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

6. Press [Change].

Settings				
f erase, then press [Erase].				
<b>3</b> time(s) <1~3>	Change			
<\~\>				

Enter the number of times that you want to overwrite using the number keys, and then press
[#].

			Exit
		Cancel	ОК
, then press	⊕.		
	Change	Clear	(#)

- 8. Press [Erase].
- 9. Press [Yes].
- 10. When overwriting is completed, press [Exit], and then turn off the power.

Before turning the power off, see "Turning On the Power", About This Machine.

Note

- Before erasing the hard disk, you can back up user codes, counters for each user code, and Address Book data using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
- If an error occurs before overwriting is completed, turn off the main power. Turn it on again, and then repeat from step 2.

### Suspending Erase All Memory

- 1. Press [Suspend] while Erase All Memory is in progress.
- 2. Press [Yes].

Erase All Memory is suspended.

# 3. Turn off the main power.

Before turning the power off, see "Turning On the Power", About This Machine.

# Note

• To resume overwriting, turn on the main power.

3. Ensuring Information Security

# 4. Managing Access to the Machine

This chapter describes how to prevent unauthorized access to and modification of the machine's settings.

# **Preventing Modification of Machine Settings**

This section describes Preventing Modification of Machine Settings.

The administrator type determines which machine settings can be modified. Users cannot change the administrator settings. In "Admin. Authentication", [Available Settings], the administrator can select which settings users cannot specify. For details about the administrator roles, see "Administrators and Users".

Register the administrators before using the machine. For instructions on registering the administrator, see "Administrator Authentication".

#### Type of Administrator

Register the administrator on the machine, and then authenticate the administrator using the administrator's login user name and password. The administrator can also specify [Available Settings] in "Admin. Authentication" to prevent users from specifying certain settings. Administrator type determines which machine settings can be modified. The following administrator types are possible:

User Administrator

For a list of settings that the user administrator can specify, see "User Administrator Settings".

• Machine Administrator

For a list of settings that the machine administrator can specify, see "Machine Administrator Settings".

• Network Administrator

For a list of settings that the network administrator can specify, see "Network Administrator Settings".

• File Administrator

For a list of settings that the file administrator can specify, see "File Administrator Settings".

#### **Menu Protect**

Use this function to specify the permission level for users to change those settings accessible by nonadministrators.

You can specify Menu Protect for the following settings:

- Copier / Document Server Features
- Facsimile Features
- Printer Features
- Scanner Features

For a list of settings that users can specify according to the Menu Protect level, see "User Settings - Control Panel Settings", "User Settings - Web Image Monitor Settings".

## Reference

- p.19 "Administrators and Users"
- p.27 "Administrator Authentication"
- p.295 "User Administrator Settings"
- p.277 "Machine Administrator Settings"
- p.288 "Network Administrator Settings"
- p.293 "File Administrator Settings"
- p.302 "User Settings Control Panel Settings"
- p.327 "User Settings Web Image Monitor Settings"

# **Menu Protect**

The administrator can also limit users' access permission to the machine's settings. The machine's [System Settings] menu and the printer's regular menus can be locked so they cannot be changed. This function is also effective when management is not based on user authentication. For a list of settings that users can specify according to the Menu Protect level, see "User Settings - Control Panel Settings", "User Settings - Web Image Monitor Settings".

To change the menu protect setting, you must first enable administrator authentication.

#### Reference

- p.302 "User Settings Control Panel Settings"
- p.327 "User Settings Web Image Monitor Settings"

## Menu Protect

You can set menu protect to [Off], [Level 1], or [Level 2]. If you set it to [Off], no menu protect limitation is applied. To limit access to the fullest extent, select [Level 2].

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

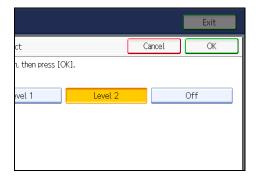
#### **Copying Functions**

To specify [Menu Protect] in [Copier / Document Server Features], set [Machine Management] to [On] in [Administrator Authentication Management] in [Administrator Tools] in [System Settings].

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [Copier / Document Server Features].

🚸 User Tools / Counter / Enquiry			
		6	Copier / Document Features
	System Settings	<b>ß</b> :	Facsimile Feat
		<u>B</u>	Printer Featur
ß	Maintenance		Scanner Featu

- 3. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 4. Press [Menu Protect].
- 5. Select the menu protect level, and then press [OK].

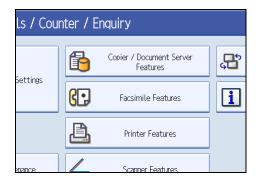


6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### **Fax Functions**

To specify [Menu Protect] in [Facsimile Features], set [Machine Management] to [On] in [Administrator Authentication Management] in [Administrator Tools] in [System Settings].

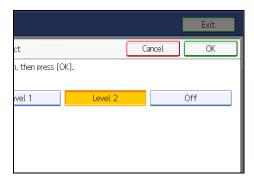
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [Facsimile Features].



- 3. Press [Initial Settings].
- 4. Press [Menu Protect].

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [▼Next] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Select the menu protect level, and then press [OK].

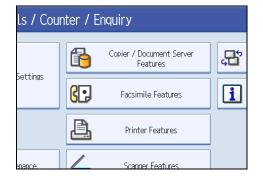


6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# **Printer Functions**

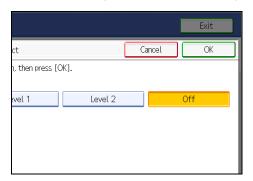
To specify [Menu Protect] in [Printer Features], set [Machine Management] to [On] in [Administrator Authentication Management] in [Administrator Tools] in [System Settings].

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [Printer Features].



- 3. Press [Maintenance].
- 4. Press [Menu Protect].

5. Select the menu protect level, and then press [OK].

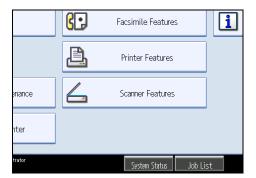


6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# **Scanner Functions**

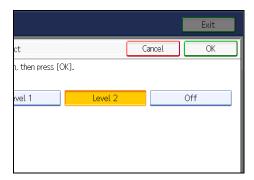
To specify [Menu Protect] in [Scanner Features], set [Machine Management] to [On] in [Administrator Authentication Management] in [Administrator Tools] in [System Settings].

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [Scanner Features].



- 3. Press [Initial Settings].
- 4. Press [Menu Protect].

5. Select the menu protect level, and then press [OK].



6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

4

# **Limiting Available Functions**

To prevent unauthorized operation, you can specify who is allowed to access each of the machine's functions.

#### **Available Functions**

Specify the available functions from the copier, Document Server, fax, scanner, and printer functions.

Copier	[Full Colour / Two Colour / Single Colour / Black & White, Two-colour / Single Colour / Black & White], [Single Colour / Black & White], [Black & White Only], [Colour]
Printer	[Full Colour], [Single Colour], [Colour]
Other Functions [Document Server], [Facsimile], [Scanner]	

## **Vote**

- To copy in both colour and black/white select [Full Colour/Two Colour/ Black & White]. To print in both colour and black/white select [Full Colour].
- Unless you select all items in the Copier or Printer setting, the [Auto Colour Selection] key cannot be used.

# Specifying Which Functions are Available

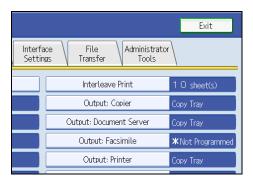
This can be specified by the user administrator. Specify the functions available to registered users. By making this setting, you can limit the functions available to users.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Address Book Management].



5. Select the user.

Press (New Progra	m] to add new or	select from list	below to edit.	Selection can b
Program /	Change	Delete		
All Users			Fax	E-mail
Frequent	AB CD	EF GH	IJK LMN	OPQ RS
【00021】 USET	[00003] BERLIN OFF ICE	[00004] LONDON OFF ICE	【00005】 NEW YORK O FFICE	[00006] TORONTO O FICE
[00008] DETROIT FA CTORY	[00011] LOS ANGELE S FACT	[00001] ABCD COMPA NY	(00009) SAN FRANCI SCO OF	(00010) SYDNEY OF ICE

6. Press [Auth. Info].



7. In "Available Functions", select the functions you want to specify.

🔯 System Settings						
Program / Chang	Program / Change Address Book					
Names	Auth. In	fo	Protection	Fax Dest.		
► Available Fund	tions					
Copier		F	ull Colour / Two	-colour / Single C		
	Two-colour / Single Colour /					
Single Colour / Black &						
			Black & White (	Doly		

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Managing Log Files**

1. Log information

To view the log, Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard is required.

The following log information is stored in the machine's memory and on its hard disk:

Job log

Stores information about workflow related to user files, such as copying, printing, fax delivery, and scan file delivery.

Fax job logs are not stored.

Access log

Stores information about access, such as logging on and off, creating and deleting files, scanning invalid images, administrator procedures, and service representative procedures.

Administrator procedures include deleting all log information, changing the Job Log function settings, changing the Access Log function settings, and changing the Log Encryption settings.

Service representative procedures include formatting the hard disk and specifying whether or not to store job logs and access logs.

2. Deleting log information

By deleting the log stored in the machine, you can free up space on the hard disk.

3. Transferring log information

You can transfer the log information, which indicates who tried to gain access and at what time. By transferring the log files, you can check the history data and identify unauthorized access.

# **Specifying Delete All Logs**

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

By deleting the log stored in the machine, you can free up space on the hard disk.

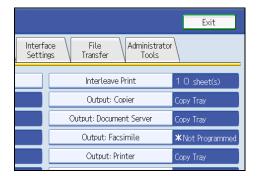
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

4

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Delete All Logs].

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [VNext] to scroll down to other settings.

A confirmation message appears.

- 5. Press [Yes].
- 6. Press [Exit].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# **Transfer Log Setting**

The machine administrator can select [On] from the log server only.

When using the machine's control panel, you can change the setting to [Off] only if it is set to [On].

You can check and change the transfer log setting. This setting lets you transfer log files to the log server to check the history data and identify unauthorized access.

For details about Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard, contact your sales representative.

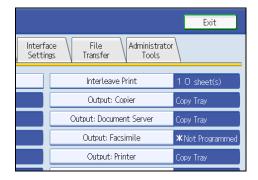
For details about the transfer log setting, see Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard Help.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

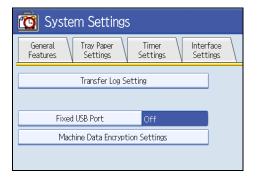
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].

🚸 User Tools / Counter / Enquiry				
ß		<b>B</b>	Copier / Document Features	
	System Settings	6.	Facsimile Feat	
		<u>B</u>	Printer Featur	
Q	Maintenance		Scanner Featu	

3. Press [Administrator Tools].



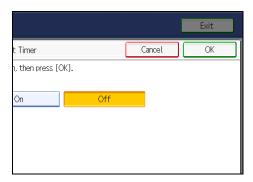
4. Press [Transfer Log Setting].



If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

4

5. Press [Off].



- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## **Reference**

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# 5. Enhanced Network Security

This chapter describes how to increase security over the network using the machine's functions.

## **Preventing Unauthorized Access**

You can limit IP addresses, disable ports and protocols, or use Web Image Monitor to specify the network security level to prevent unauthorized access over the network and protect the Address Book, stored files, and default settings.

#### Access Control

This can be specified by the network administrator using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

The machine can control TCP/IP access.

Limit the IP addresses from which access is possible by specifying the access control range.

For example, if you specify the access control range as [192.168.15.16]-[192.168.15.20], the client PC addresses from which access is possible will be from [192.168.15.16] to [192.168.15.20].

🔁 Important 🗋

- Using access control, you can limit access involving LPR, RCP/RSH, FTP, IPP, DIPRINT, Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client or DeskTopBinder. You cannot limit the monitoring of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client. You cannot limit access involving telnet, or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, when using the SNMPv1 monitoring.
- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter " http://( the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on using the appropriate login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Access Control] under "Security".

The Access Control page appears.

5. To specify the IPv4 Address, enter an IP address that has access to the machine in "Access Control Range".

To specify the IPv6 Address, enter an IP address that has access to the machine in "Range" under "Access Control Range", or enter an IP address in "Mask" and specify the "Mask Length". 6. Click [OK].

Access control is set.

7. Click [Logout].

## **Enabling/Disabling Protocols**

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Specify whether to enable or disable the function for each protocol. By making this setting, you can specify which protocols are available and so prevent unauthorized access over the network. Network settings can be specified on the control panel, or using Web Image Monitor, telnet, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard. For details about making settings using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or Web SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or Web SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or Web SmartDeviceMonitor Professional IS/Standard. For details about making settings using SmartDeviceMonitor. For details about making settings using telnet, see "Remote Maintenance by telnet", Network Guide. To disable SMTP on Web Image Monitor, in E-mail settings, set the protocol to anything other than SMTP. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

Protocol	Port	Setting Method	Disabled Condition
IPv4	-	<ul> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web</li> </ul>	All applications that operate over IPv4 cannot be used. IPv4 cannot be disabled from Web Image Monitor when using
		SmartDeviceMonitor	IPv4 transmission.
IPv6	-	<ul> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	All applications that operate over IPv6 cannot be used.
IPsec	-	<ul><li>Control Panel</li><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	Encrypted transmission using IPsec is disabled.

Protocol	Port	Setting Method	Disabled Condition
FTP	TCP:21	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Functions that require FTP cannot be used. You can restrict personal information from being displayed by making settings on the control panel using "Restrict Display of User Information".* 1
sshd/sftpd	TCP:22	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Functions that require sftp cannot be used. You can restrict personal information from being displayed by making settings on the control panel using "Restrict Display of User Information".*1
telnet	TCP:23	Web Image Monitor	Commands using telnet are disabled.
SMTP	TCP:25 (variable)	<ul> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Internet fax or e-mail notification functions that require SMTP reception cannot be used.
НТТР	TCP:80	<ul><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	Functions that require HTTP cannot be used. Cannot print using IPP on port 80.
HTTPS	TCP:443	<ul><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	Functions that require HTTPS cannot be used. @Remote cannot be used.

Protocol	Port	Setting Method	Disabled Condition
			You can also make settings to require SSL transmission and restrict the use of other transmission methods using the control panel or Web Image Monitor.
SMB	TCP:139	<ul> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	SMB printing functions cannot be used.
NBT	UDP:137 UDP:138	• telnet	SMB printing functions via TCP/IP, as well as NetBIOS designated functions on the WINS server cannot be used.
SNMPv1,v2	UDP:161	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Functions that require SNMPv1, v2 cannot be used. Using the control panel, Web Image Monitor or telnet, you can specify that SNMPv1, v2 settings are read-only, and cannot be edited.
SNMPv3	UDP:161	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Functions that require SNMPv3 cannot be used. You can also make settings to require SNMPv3 encrypted transmission and restrict the use of other transmission methods

Protocol	Port	Setting Method	Disabled Condition
			using the control panel, Web Image Monitor, or telnet.
RSH/RCP	TCP:514	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Functions that require RSH and network TWAIN functions cannot be used. You can restrict personal information from being displayed by making settings on the control panel using "Restrict Display of User Information".* 1
LPR	TCP:515	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	LPR functions cannot be used. You can restrict personal information from being displayed by making settings on the control panel using "Restrict Display of User Information".* 1
IPP	TCP:631	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	IPP functions cannot be used.
IP-Fax	TCP:1720 UDP: 1719 TCP/UDP:5060 (TCP/UDP are variable)	<ul> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	IP-Fax connections using H.323/SIP connection functions cannot be used.

Protocol	Port	Setting Method	Disabled Condition
SSDP	UDP:1900	<ul><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	Device discovery using UPnP from Windows cannot be used.
Bonjour	UDP:5353	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Bonjour functions cannot be used.
@Remote	TCP:7443 TCP:7444	• telnet	@Remote cannot be used.
DIPRINT	TCP:9100	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	DIPRINT functions cannot be used.
RFU	TCP:10021	• telnet	You can attempt to update firmware via FTP.
NetWare	(IPX/SPX)	<ul> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	Cannot print with NetWare. SNMP over IPX cannot be used.
AppleTalk	(PAP)	<ul><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	Cannot print with AppleTalk.
WS-Device	TCP:53000 (variable)	<ul><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	WS-Device functions cannot be used.

Protocol	Port	Setting Method	Disabled Condition
		<ul> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	
WS-Printer	TCP:53001 (variable)	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	WS-Printer functions cannot be used.
WS-Discovery	TCP:3702 UDP:3702	<ul> <li>Web Image Monitor</li> <li>telnet</li> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin</li> <li>Web SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>	WS-Device/Printer search function cannot be used.
RHPP	TCP:59100	<ul><li>Web Image Monitor</li><li>telnet</li></ul>	Cannot print with RHPP.

\*1 "Restrict Display of User Information" is one of the Extended Security features. For details about making this setting, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

## Reference

• p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"

## Making Settings Using the Control Panel

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

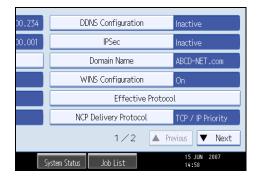
2. Press [System Settings].



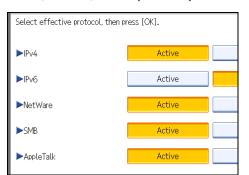
3. Press [Interface Settings].

Settings	5			
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interface Settings	File Adminis Transfer Toc	
hange / Del	ete User Text		Interleave Print	
ound	Off	Off Output: Copier		
eeper	On		Output: Document Server	
Display	Up		Output: Facsimile	
ority	Copier		Output: Printer	

4. Press [Effective Protocol].



5. Press [Inactive] for the protocol you want to disable.



- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

#### Making Settings Using Web Image Monitor

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

- 4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Network Security] under "Security".
- 5. Set the desired protocols to active/inactive (or open/close).
- 6. Click [OK].
- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Click [Logout].

## Specifying Network Security Level

This can be specified by the network administrator. This setting lets you change the security level to limit unauthorized access. You can make network security level settings on the control panel, as well as Web Image Monitor. However, the protocols that can be specified differ.

Set the security level to [Level 0], [Level 1], or [Level 2].

Select [Level 2] for maximum security to protect confidential information. Make this setting when it is necessary to protect confidential information from outside threats.

Select [Level 1] for moderate security to protect important information. Use this setting if the machine is connected to the office local area network (LAN).

Select [Level 0] for easy use of all the features. Use this setting when you have no information that needs to be protected from outside threats.

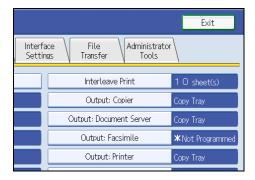
For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

#### Making Settings Using the Control Panel

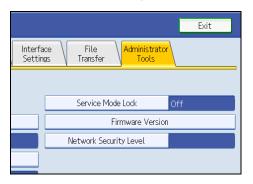
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Network Security Level].



If the setting you want to specify does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Select the network security level.

		ĺ
Network Security Level	Cancel	
Select item, then press [OK].		
Level 0 Level 1		Le

Select [Level 0], [Level 1], or [Level 2].

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press [Exit].
- 8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

#### Making Settings Using Web Image Monitor

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

5

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

- 4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Network Security] under "Security".
- 5. Select the network security level in "Security Level".
- 6. Click [OK].
- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Click [Logout].

### Status of Functions under each Network Security Level

#### Tab Name:TCP/IP

Function	Level 0	Level 1	Level 2
TCP/IP	Available	Available	Available
HTTP> Port 80	open	open	open
HTTP> Port 443	open	open	open
HTTP> Port 631	open	open	closed
HTTP> Port 7443/7444	open	open	open
IPP> Port 80	open	open	open
IPP> Port 631	open	open	closed
IPP> Port 443	open	open	open
DIPRINT	Available	Available	Unavailable
LPR	Available	Available	Unavailable
FTP> Port 21	open	open	open
ssh> Port 22	open	open	open
sftp	open	open	open
RFU> Port 10021	open	open	open
RSH/RCP	Available	Available	Unavailable
SNMP	Available	Available	Available

Function	Level O	Level 1	Level 2
SNMP v1v2> Setting	Available	Unavailable	Unavailable
SNMP v1v2> Browse	Available	Available	Unavailable
SNMP v3	Available	Available	Available
SNMP v3> SNMP Encryption	Automatic	Automatic	Ciphertext Only
TELNET	Available	Unavailable	Unavailable
SSDP> Port 1900	open	open	closed
NBT> Port 137/138	open	open	closed
SSL	Available	Available	Available
SSL> SSL / TLS Encryption Mode	Ciphertext Priority	Ciphertext Priority	Ciphertext Only
Bonjour	Available	Available	Unavailable
SMB	Available	Available	Unavailable
WS-MFP> WS-Device	Available	Available	Unavailable
WS-MFP> WS-Printer	Available	Available	Unavailable
WS-MFP> WS-Discovery	Available	Available	Unavailable
RHPP	Available	Available	Unavailable

## Tab Name:NetWare

Function	Level 0	Level 1	Level 2
NetWare	Available	Available	Unavailable

## Tab Name:AppleTalk

Function	Level O	Level 1	Level 2
AppleTalk	Available	Available	Unavailable

## **Encrypting Transmitted Passwords**

Prevent login passwords, group passwords for PDF files, and IPP authentication passwords from being revealed by encrypting them for transmission.

Also, encrypt the login password for administrator authentication and user authentication.

#### **Driver Encryption Key**

Encrypt the password transmitted when specifying user authentication.

To encrypt the login password, specify the driver encryption key on the machine and on the printer driver installed in the user's computer.

#### **Group Passwords for PDF Files**

DeskTopBinder Lite's PDF Direct Print function allows a PDF group password to be specified to enhance security.

To use PDF direct print, the optional PostScript 3 Unit must be installed.

#### **Password for IPP Authentication**

To encrypt the IPP Authentication password on Web Image Monitor, set "Authentication" to [DIGEST], and then specify the IPP Authentication password set on the machine.

You can use telnet or FTP to manage passwords for IPP authentication, although it is not recommended.

## **Driver Encryption Key**

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Specify the driver encryption key on the machine.

By making this setting, you can encrypt login passwords for transmission to prevent them from being analyzed.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

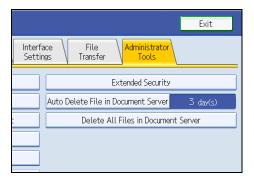
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interface Settings	File Administra Transfer Tools	
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier	Copy Tray
Output: Document Server Copy Tray		
Output: Facsimile * Not Programmed		∗Not Programmed
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

4. Press [Extended Security].



5. For "Driver Encryption Key", press [Change].

🔯 System Settings		
Extended Security		
Select item.		
►Driver Encryption Key	Change	►Restrict Use of On
►Encrypt Address Book		►Restrict Adding
On	Off	Restrict Display

"Driver Encryption Key" is one of the extended security functions. For details about this and other security functions, see "Specifying the Extended Security Functions".

6. Enter the driver encryption key, and then press [OK].

Enter the driver encryption key using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

The network administrator must give users the driver encryption key specified on the machine so they can register it on their computers. Make sure to enter the same driver encryption key that is specified on the machine.

- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

For details about specifying the encryption key on the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

For details about specifying the encryption key on the TWAIN driver, see the TWAIN driver Help.

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.233 "Specifying the Extended Security Functions"

## **Group Password for PDF files**

This can be specified by the network administrator.

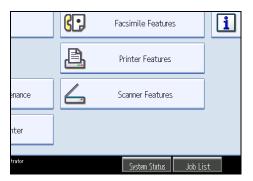
On the machine, specify the group password for PDF files.

By using a PDF group password, you can enhance security and so protect passwords from being analyzed.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [Printer Features].



- 3. Press [PDF Menu].
- 4. Press [PDF Group Password].

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [▼Next].

- 5. For [New Password], press [Enter].
- 6. Enter the password, and then press [OK].
- 7. For [Confirm New Password], press [Enter].
- 8. Enter the password and press [OK].
- 9. Press [OK].
- 10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Note

- To specify the PDF group password, the printer language must be set to PDF. For details about making printer language settings, see Printer Reference.
- The network administrator must give users the group password for PDF files that are already registered on the machine. The users can then register it in DeskTopBinder on their computers. For details, see DeskTopBinder Help.
- Be sure to enter the same character string as that specified on the machine for the group password for PDF files.
- The group password for PDF files can also be specified using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

## **IPP** Authentication Password

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Specify the IPP authentication passwords for the machine using Web Image Monitor.

By making this setting, you can encrypt IPP authentication passwords for transmission to prevent them from being analyzed.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on. Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [IPP Authentication] under "Security".

The IPP Authentication page appears.

- 5. Select [DIGEST] from the "Authentication" list.
- 6. Enter the user name in the "User Name" box.
- 7. Enter the password in the "Password" box.
- 8. Click [Apply].

IPP authentication is specified.

9. Click [Logout].

#### Note

• When using the IPP port under Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, you can use the operating system's standard IPP port.

5

## **Protection Using Encryption**

Establish encrypted transmission on this machine using SSL, SNMPv3, and IPsec. By encrypting transmitted data and safeguarding the transmission route, you can prevent sent data from being intercepted, analyzed, and tampered with.

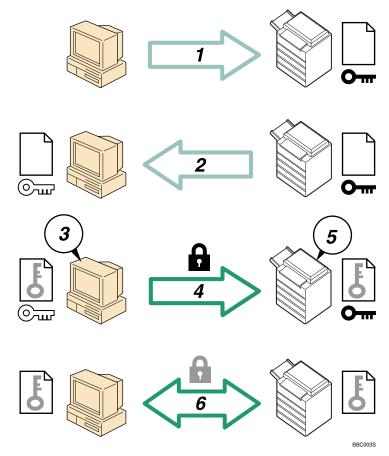
## SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption

This can be specified by the network administrator.

To protect the communication path and establish encrypted communication, create and install the device certificate.

There are two ways of installing a device certificate: create and install a self-signed certificate using the machine, or request a certificate from a certificate authority and install it.

#### SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)



1. To access the machine from a user's computer, request the SSL device certificate and public key.

- 2. The device certificate and public key are sent from the machine to the user's computer.
- 3. Create a shared key from the user's computer, and then encrypt it using the public key.
- 4. The encrypted shared key is sent to the machine.
- 5. The encrypted shared key is decrypted in the machine using the private key.
- 6. Transmit the encrypted data using the shared key, and the data is then decrypted at the machine to attain secure transmission.

#### Configuration flow (self-signed certificate)

Creating and installing the device certificate

Install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

2. Enabling SSL

Enable the "SSL/TLS" setting using Web Image Monitor.

#### Configuration flow (certificate issued by a certificate authority)

1. Creating the device certificate

Create the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

The application procedure after creating the certificate depends on the certificate authority. Follow the procedure specified by the certificate authority.

2. Installing the device certificate

Install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor.

3. Enabling SSL

Enable the "SSL/TLS" setting using Web Image Monitor.

#### Note

 To confirm whether SSL configuration is enabled, enter "https://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in your Web browser's address bar to access this machine. If the "The page cannot be displayed" message appears, check the configuration because the current SSL configuration is invalid.

#### Creating and Installing the Self-Signed Certificate

Create and install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor. For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

This section explains the use of a self-signed certificate as the device certificate.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

- 4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".
- 5. Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to create.
- 6. Click [Create].
- 7. Make the necessary settings.
- 8. Click [OK].

The setting is changed.

9. Click [OK].

A security warning dialog box appears.

10. Check the details, and then click [OK].

"Installed" appears under "Certificate Status" to show that a device certificate for the machine has been installed.

11. Click [Logout].

Note

• Click [Delete] to delete the device certificate from the machine.

#### Creating the Device Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

Create the device certificate using Web Image Monitor. For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

This section explains the use of a certificate issued by a certificate authority as the device certificate.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".

The Device Certificate page appears.

5. Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to request.

5

- 6. Click [Request].
- 7. Make the necessary settings.
- 8. Click [OK].

"Requesting" appears for "Certificate Status" in the "Certificates" area.

- 9. Click [Logout].
- 10. Apply to the certificate authority for the device certificate.

The application procedure depends on the certificate authority. For details, contact the certificate authority.

For the application, click the Web Image Monitor Details icon and use the information that appears in "Certificate Details".

#### Note

5

- The issuing location may not be displayed if you request two certificates at the same time. When you install a certificate, be sure to check the certificate destination and installation procedure.
- Using Web Image Monitor, you can create the contents of the device certificate but you cannot send the certificate application.
- Click [Cancel Request] to cancel the request for the device certificate.

#### Installing the Device Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

Install the device certificate using Web Image Monitor. For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

This section explains the use of a certificate issued by a certificate authority as the device certificate.

Enter the device certificate contents issued by the certificate authority.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".

The Device Certificate page appears.

- 5. Check the radio button next to the number of the certificate you want to install.
- 6. Click [Install].

7. Enter the contents of the device certificate.

In the "Certificate Request" box, enter the contents of the device certificate received from the certificate authority.

8. Click [OK].

"Installed" appears under "Certificate Status" to show that a device certificate for the machine has been installed.

9. Click [Logout].

#### Enabling SSL

After installing the device certificate in the machine, enable the SSL setting.

This procedure is used for a self-signed certificate or a certificate issued by a certificate authority.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [SSL/TLS] under "Security".

The SSL/TLS page appears.

- 5. Click [Enable] for the protocol version used in "SSL/TLS".
- 6. Select the encryption communication mode for "Permit SSL/TLS Communication".
- 7. Click [OK].

The SSL setting is enabled.

- 8. Click [OK].
- 9. Click [Logout].

#### 🕗 Note 👘

If you set "Permit SSL/TLS Communication" to [Ciphertext Only], enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" to access the machine.

## User Settings for SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)

If you have installed a device certificate and enabled SSL (Secure Sockets Layer), you need to install the certificate on the user's computer.

The network administrator must explain the procedure for installing the certificate to users.

If a warning dialog box appears while accessing the machine using the Web Image Monitor or IPP, start the Certificate Import Wizard and install a certificate.

1. When the Security Alert dialog box appears, click [View Certificate].

The Certificate dialog box appears.

To be able to respond to inquiries from users about such problems as expiry of the certificate, check the contents of the certificate.

2. Click [Install Certificate....] on the "General" tab.

Certificate Import Wizard starts.

3. Install the certificate by following the Certificate Import Wizard instructions.

#### Note

- For details about how to install the certificate and about where to store the certificate when accessing the machine using IPP, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- If a certificate issued by a certificate authority is installed in the machine, confirm the certificate store location with the certificate authority.

## Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode

By specifying the SSL/TLS encrypted communication mode, you can change the security level.

#### **Encrypted Communication Mode**

Using the encrypted communication mode, you can specify encrypted communication.

Ciphertext Only	Allows encrypted communication only. If encryption is not possible, the machine does not communicate.
Ciphertext Priority	Performs encrypted communication if encryption is possible. If encryption is not possible, the machine communicates without it.
Ciphertext / Cleartext	Communicates with or without encryption, according to the setting.

## Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode

This can be specified by the network administrator.

After installing the device certificate, specify the SSL/TLS encrypted communication mode. By making this setting, you can change the security level.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Interface Settings].

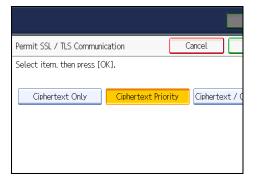
Settings					
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interfa Settin	\	File Transfer	Adminis Too
hange / Delet	e User Text			Interleav	ve Print
ound	Off			Output:	Copier
eeper	On			)utput: Docu	ment Server
Display	Up			Output: F	acsimile
ority	Copier			Output:	Printer
			_		

4. Press [Permit SSL / TLS Communication].

	Exit		
Interfa Settin			
	Print List	J	
t	Permit SNMPv3 Communication Encryption / Cleartext		
	Permit SSL / TLS Communication Ciphertext Priority		
	Host Name ScanerB		
t	Machine Name		

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [VNext] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Select the encrypted communication mode.



Select [Ciphertext Only], [Ciphertext Priority], or [Ciphertext / Cleartext] as the encrypted communication mode.

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Vote

 The SSL/TLS encrypted communication mode can also be specified using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### 🖪 Reference 🔵

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

## SNMPv3 Encryption

This can be specified by the network administrator.

When using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or another application to make various settings, you can encrypt the data transmitted.

By making this setting, you can protect data from being tampered with.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].

🚸 User Tools / Counter / Enquiry		
	Copier / Document Features	
System Settings	Facsimile Feat	
	Printer Featu	
Maintenance	Scarner Featu	

3. Press [Interface Settings].

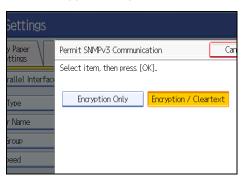
Settings	;		
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interface Settings	File Admini Transfer To
hange / Delo	ete User Text		Interleave Print
ound	Off		Output: Copier
eeper	On		Output: Document Serve
Display	Up		Output: Facsimile
ority	Copier		Output: Printer

4. Press [Permit SNMPv3 Communication].

	Exit		
Interfa Settin			
	Print List		
t	Permit SNMPv3 Communication Encryption / Cleartext		
	Permit SSL / TLS Communication Ciphertext Priority		
	Host Name ScanerB		
t	Machine Name		

If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [\*Next] to scroll down to other settings.

5. Press [Encryption Only].



- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Vote

- To use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin for encrypting the data for specifying settings, you need to specify the network administrator's [Encryption Password] setting and [Encryption Key] in [SNMP Authentication Information] in SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, in addition to specifying [Permit SNMPv3 Communication] on the machine. For details about specifying [Encryption Key] in SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
- If network administrator's [Encryption Password] setting is not specified, the data for transmission may not be encrypted or sent. For details about specifying the network administrator's [Encryption Password] setting, see "Registering the Administrator".

## Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.30 "Registering the Administrator"

## **Transmission Using IPsec**

This can be specified by the network administrator.

For communication security, this machine supports IPsec. IPsec transmits secure data packets at the IP protocol level using the shared key encryption method, where both the sender and receiver retain the same key. This machine has two methods that you can use to specify the shared encryption key for both parties: encryption key auto exchange and encryption key manual settings. Using the auto exchange setting, you can renew the shared key exchange settings within a specified validity period, and achieve higher transmission security.

#### Comportant 🗋

- When "Inactive" is specified for "Exclude HTTPS Transmission", access to Web Image Monitor can be lost if the key settings are improperly configured. In order to prevent this, you can specify IPsec to exclude HTTPS transmission by selecting "Active". When you want to include HTTPS transmission, we recommend that you select "Inactive" for "Exclude HTTPS Transmission" after confirming that IPsec is properly configured. When "Active" is selected for "Exclude HTTPS Transmission", even though HTTPS transmission is not targeted by IPsec, Web Image Monitor might become unusable when TCP is targeted by IPsec from the computer side. If you cannot access Web Image Monitor due to IPsec configuration problems, disable IPsec in System Settings on the control panel, and then access Web Image Monitor. For details about enabling and disabling IPsec using the control panel, see "System Settings", General Settings Guide.
- IPsec is not applied to data obtained through DHCP, DNS, or WINS.
- IPsec compatible operating systems are Windows XP SP2, Windows Vista, Mac OSX 10.4 and later, RedHat Linux Enterprise WS 4.0, and Solaris 10. However, some setting items are not supported depending on the operating system. Make sure the IPsec settings you specify are consistent with the operating system's IPsec settings.

### **Encryption and Authentication by IPsec**

IPsec consists of two main functions: the encryption function, which ensures the confidentiality of data, and the authentication function, which verifies the sender of the data and the data's integrity. This machine's IPsec function supports two security protocols: the ESP protocol, which enables both of the IPsec functions at the same time, and the AH protocol, which enables only the authentication function.

#### ESP Protocol

Performs secure transmission through both encryption and authentication.

• For successful encryption, both the sender and receiver must specify the same encryption algorithm and encryption key. If you use the encryption key auto exchange method, the encryption algorithm and encryption key are specified automatically.

• For successful authentication, the sender and receiver must specify the same authentication algorithm and authentication key. If you use the encryption key auto exchange method, the authentication algorithm and authentication key are specified automatically.

#### AH Protocol

Performs secure transmission using authentication only.

For successful authentication, the sender and receiver must specify the same authentication
algorithm and authentication key. If you use the encryption key auto exchange method, the
authentication algorithm and authentication key are specified automatically.

#### Vote

• Some operating systems use the term "Compliance" in place of "Authentication".

## Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings and Encryption Key Manual Settings

This machine provides two key setting methods: manual and auto exchange. Using either of these methods, agreements such as the IPsec algorithm and key must be specified for both sender and receiver. Such agreements form what is known as an SA (Security Association). IPsec communication is possible only if the receiver's and sender's SA settings are identical.

If you use the auto exchange method to specify the encryption key, the SA settings are auto configured on both parties' machines. However, before setting the IPsec SA, the ISAKMPSA (Phase 1) settings are auto configured. After this, the IPsec SA (Phase 2) settings, which allow actual IPsec transmission, are auto configured.

Also, for further security, the SA can be periodically auto updated by applying a validity period (time limit) for its settings. This machine only supports IKEv1 for encryption key auto exchange.

If you specify the encryption key manually, the SA settings must be shared and specified identically by both parties. To preserve the security of your SA settings, we recommend that they are not exchanged over a network.

Note that for both the manual and auto method of encryption key specification, multiple settings can be configured in the SA.

#### Settings 1-4 and Default Setting

Using either the manual or auto exchange method, you can configure four separate sets of SA details (such as different shared keys and IPsec algorithms). In the default settings of these sets, you can include settings that the fields of sets 1 to 4 cannot contain.

When IPsec is enabled, set 1 has the highest priority and 4 has the lowest. You can use this priority system to target IP addresses more securely. For example, set the broadest IP range at the lowest priority (4), and then set specific IP addresses at a higher priority level (3 and higher). This way, when IPsec transmission is enabled for a specific IP address, the higher level security settings will be applied.

## **IPsec Settings**

IPsec settings for this machine can be made on Web Image Monitor. The following table explains individual setting items.

## Encryption Key Auto Exchange / Manual Settings - Shared Settings

Setting	Description	Setting Value
lPsec	Specify whether to enable or disable IPsec.	<ul><li>Active</li><li>Inactive</li></ul>
Exclude HTTPS Transmission	Specify whether to enable IPsec for HTTPS transmission.	<ul> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> <li>Specify "Active" if you do not want to use IPsec for HTTPS transmission.</li> </ul>
Encryption Key Manual Settings	Specify whether to enable Encryption Key Manual Settings, or use Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings only.	<ul> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> <li>Specify "Active" if you want to use "Encryption Key Manual Exchange Settings".</li> </ul>

## Encryption Key Auto Exchange Security Level

When you select a security level, certain security settings are automatically configured. The following table explains security level features.

Security Level	Security Level Features
Authentication Only	Select this level if you want to authenticate the transmission partner and prevent unauthorized data tampering, but not perform data packet encryption.
Authentication Only	Since the data is sent in cleartext, data packets are vulnerable to eavesdropping attacks. Do not select this if you are exchanging sensitive information.
Authentication and Low Level Encryption	Select this level if you want to encrypt the data packets as well as authenticate the transmission partner and prevent unauthorized packet tampering. Packet encryption helps prevent eavesdropping attacks. This level provides less security than "Authentication and High Level Encryption".

Security Level	Security Level Features
Authentication and High Level Encryption	Select this level if you want to encrypt the data packets as well as authenticate the transmission partner and prevent unauthorized packet tampering. Packet encryption helps prevent eavesdropping attacks. This level provides higher security than "Authentication and Low Level Encryption".

The following table lists the settings that are automatically configured according to the security level.

Setting	Authentication Only	Authentication and Low Level Encryption	Authentication and High Level Encryption
Security Policy	Apply	Apply	Apply
Encapsul ation Mode	Transport	Transport	Transport
IPsec Requirem ent Level	Use When Possible	Use When Possible	Always Require
Authentic ation Method	PSK	PSK	PSK
Phase 1 Hash Algorithm	MD5	SHA1	SHA1
Phase 1 Encryptio n Algorithm	DES	3DES	3DES
Phase 1 Diffie- Hellman Group	2	2	2
Phase 2 Security Protocol	АН	ESP	ESP

Setting	Authentication Only	Authentication and Low Level Encryption	Authentication and High Level Encryption
Phase 2 Authentic ation Algorithm	HMAC-MD5-96/ HMAC-SHA1-96	HMAC-MD5-96/HMAC- SHA1-96	HMAC-SHA1-96
Phase 2 Encryptio n Algorithm	Cleartext (NULL encryption)	DES/3DES/AES-128/ AES-192/AES-256	3DES/AES-128/ AES-192/AES-256
Phase 2 PFS	Inactive	Inactive	2

#### **Encryption Key Auto Exchange Setting Items**

When you specify a security level, the corresponding security settings are automatically configured, but other settings, such as address type, local address, and remote address must still be configured manually.

After you specify a security level, you can still make changes to the auto configured settings. When you change an auto configured setting, the security level switches automatically to "User Setting".

Setting	Description	Setting Value
Address Type	Specify the address type for which IPsec transmission is used.	<ul> <li>Inactive</li> <li>IPv4</li> <li>IPv6</li> <li>IPv4/IPv6 (Default Settings only)</li> </ul>
Local Address	Specify the machine's address. If you are using multiple addresses in IPv6, you can also specify an address range.	The machine's IPv4 or IPv6 address. If you are not setting an address range, enter 32 after an IPv4 address, or enter 128 after an IPv6 address.
Remote Address	Specify the address of the IPsec transmission partner. You can also specify an address range.	The IPsec transmission partner's IPv4 or IPv6 address. If you are not setting an address range, enter 32 after an IPv4

Setting	Description	Setting Value
		address, or enter 128 after an IPv6 address.
Encapsulation Mode	Specify the encapsulation mode. (auto setting)	<ul> <li>Transport</li> <li>Tunnel</li> <li>(Tunnel beginning address - Tunnel ending address)</li> <li>If you specify "Tunnel", you must then specify the "Tunnel End Points", which are the beginning and ending IP addresses. Set the same address for the beginning point as you set in "Local Address".</li> </ul>
IPsec Requirement Level	Specify whether to only transmit using IPsec, or to allow cleartext transmission when IPsec cannot be established. (auto setting)	<ul><li>Use When Possible</li><li>Always Require</li></ul>
Authentication Method	Specify the method for authenticating transmission partners. (auto setting)	<ul> <li>PSK</li> <li>Certificate</li> <li>If you specify PSK, you must then set the PSK text (using ASCII characters).</li> <li>If you specify Certificate, the certificate for IPsec must be installed and specified before it can be used.</li> </ul>
Phase 1 HASH Algorithm	Specify the HASH algorithm to be used in phase 1. (auto setting)	• MD5 • SHA1
Phase 1 Encryption Algorithm	Specify the encryption algorithm to be used in phase 1. (auto setting)	<ul><li>DES</li><li>3DES</li></ul>

Setting	Description	Setting Value	
Phase 1 Diffie-Hellman Group	Specify the Diffie-Hellman group number. (auto setting)	• 1 • 2	
Phase 1 Validity Period	Specify the time period for which the SA settings in phase 1 are valid. Set in seconds from 300 s min.) to 172800 sec. (48		
Phase 2 Security Protocol	Specify the security protocol to be used in Phase 2. (auto setting)	<ul><li>ESP</li><li>AH</li><li>ESP+AH</li></ul>	
Phase 2 Authentication Algorithm	Specify the authentication algorithm to be used in phase 2. (auto setting)	<ul><li>HMAC-MD5-96</li><li>HMAC-SHA1-96</li></ul>	
Phase 2 Encryption Algorithm Permissions	Specify the encryption algorithm to be used in phase 2. (auto setting)	<ul> <li>Cleartext (NULL encryption)</li> <li>DES</li> <li>3DES</li> <li>AES-128</li> <li>AES-192</li> <li>AES-256</li> </ul>	
Phase 2 PFS	Specify whether to activate PFS. Then, if PFS is activated, select the Diffie-Hellman group. (auto setting)	<ul> <li>Inactive</li> <li>1</li> <li>2</li> <li>14</li> </ul>	
Phase 2 Validity Period	Specify the time period for which the SA settings in phase 2 are valid.	Specify a period (in seconds) from 300 (5min.) to 172800 (48 hrs.).	

# **Encryption Key Manual Settings Items**

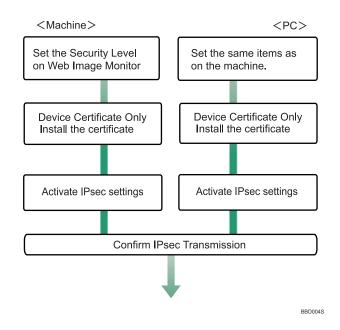
Setting	Description	Setting Value	
Address Type	Specify the address type for which IPsec transmission is used.	<ul> <li>Inactive</li> <li>IPv4</li> <li>IPv6</li> <li>IPv4/IPv6 (Default Settings only)</li> </ul>	
Local Address	Specify the machine's address. If you are using multiple IPvó addresses, you can also specify an address range.	The machine's IPv4 or IPv6 address. If you are not setting an address range, enter 32 after an IPv4 address, or enter 128 after an IPv6 address.	
Remote Address	Specify the address of the IPsec transmission partner. You can also specify an address range.	The IPsec transmission partner's IPv4 or IPv6 address. If you are not setting an address range, enter 32 after an IPv4 address, or enter 128 after an IPv6 address.	
Encapsulation Mode	Select the encapsulation mode.	<ul> <li>Transport</li> <li>Tunnel</li> <li>(Tunnel beginning address - Tunnel ending address)</li> <li>If you select "Tunnel", set the "Tunnel End Point", the beginning and ending IP addresses. In "Tunnel End Point", set the same address for the beginning point as you set in "Local Address".</li> </ul>	
SPI (Output)	Specify the same value as your transmission partner's SPI input value.	Any number between 256 and 4095	

Setting	Description	Setting Value	
SPI (Input)	Specify the same value as your transmission partner's SPI output value.	Any number between 256 and 4095	
Security Protocol	To use encryption and authentication data, specify EPS.• EPS • AHTo use authentication data only, specify AH.• AH		
Authentication Algorithm	Specify the authentication algorithm.	<ul><li>HMAC-MD5-96</li><li>HMAC-SHA1-96</li></ul>	
Authentication Key	Specify the key for the authentication algorithm.	Specify a value within the ranges shown below, according to the encryption algorithm. hexadecimal value 0-9, a-f, A-F • If HMAC-MD5-96, set 32 digits • If HMAC-SHA1-96, set 40 digits ASCII • IF HMAC-MD5-96, set 16 characters • If HMAC-SHA1-96, set 20 characters	
Encryption Algorithm	Specify the encryption algorithm.	<ul> <li>Cleartext (NULL encryption)</li> <li>DES</li> <li>3DES</li> <li>AES-128</li> <li>AES-192</li> <li>AES-256</li> </ul>	

Setting	Description	Setting Value
Encryption Key	Specify the key for the encryption algorithm.	Specify a value within the ranges shown below, according to the encryption algorithm. hexadecimal value 0-9, a-f, A-F • DES, set 16 digits • 3DES, set 48 digits • AES-128, set 32 digits • AES-192, set 48 digits • AES-256, set 64 digits AES-256, set 64 digits AES-128, set 24 characters • 3DES, set 24 characters • AES-128, set 16 characters • AES-192, set 24 characters • AES-256, set 32 characters

# Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Configuration Flow

This section explains the procedure for specifying Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings. This can be specified by the network administrator.



#### **Vote**

- To use a certificate to authenticate the transmission partner in encryption key auto exchange settings, a device certificate must be installed.
- After configuring IPsec, you can use "Ping" command to check if the connection is established correctly. However, you cannot use "Ping" command when ICMP is excluded from IPsec transmission on the computer side. Also, because the response is slow during initial key exchange, it may take some time to confirm that transmission has been established.

### Specifying Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings

This can be specified using Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on. Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [IPsec] under "Security".

The IPsec settings page appears.

5. Click [Edit] under "Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings".

6. Make encryption key auto exchange settings in "Settings 1".

If you want to make multiple settings, select the settings number and add settings.

- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Select [Active] for "IPsec".
- 9. Set "Exclude HTTPS Transmission" to [Active] if you do not want to use IPsec for HTTPS transmission.
- 10. Click [OK].
- 11. Click [Logout].

Note

 To change the transmission partner authentication method for encryption key auto exchange settings to "Certificate", you must first install and assign a certificate. For details about creating and installing a device certificate, see "Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission".

Reference

• p.133 "Using S/MIME to Protect Email Transmission"

#### Selecting the Certificate for IPsec

This can be specified by the network administrator.

Using Web Image Monitor, select the certificate to be used for IPsec. You must install the certificate before it can be used.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4. Click [Configuration], and then click [Device Certificate] under "Security".

The Device Certificate settings page appears.

- Select the certificate to be used for IPsec from the drop down box in "IPsec" under "Certificate".
- 6. Click [OK].

The certificate for IPsec is specified.

7. Click [OK].

#### 8. Click [Logout].

#### Specifying IPsec Settings on the Computer

Specify exactly the same settings for IPsec SA settings on your computer as are specified by the machine's security level on the machine. Setting methods differ according to the computer's operating system. The example procedure shown here uses Windows XP when the Authentication and Low Level Encryption Security level is selected.

- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel], click [Performance and Maintenance], and then click [Administrative Tools].
- 2. Click [Local Security Policy].
- 3. Click [IP Security Policies on Local Computer].
- 4. In the "Action" menu, click [Create IP Security Policy].

The IP Security Policy Wizard appears.

- 5. Click [Next].
- 6. Enter a security policy name in "Name", and then click [Next].
- 7. Clear the "Activate the default response rule" check box, and then click [Next].
- 8. Select "Edit properties", and then click [Finish].
- 9. In the "General" tab, click [Advanced].
- 10. In "Authenticate and generate a new key after every" enter the same validity period (in minutes) that is specified on the machine in Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Phase 1, and then click [Methods].
- 11. Confirm that the combination of hash algorithm (on Windows XP, "Integrity"), the encryption algorithm (on Windows XP, "Encryption"), and the Diffie-Hellman group settings in "Security method preference order" match the settings specified on the machine in Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Phase 1.
- 12. If the settings are not displayed, click [Add].
- 13. Click [OK] twice.
- Click [Add] in the "Rules" Tab. The Security Rule Wizard appears.
- 15. Click [Next].
- 16. Select "This rule does not specify a tunnel", and then click [Next].
- 17. Select the type of network for IPsec, and then click [Next].
- 18. Select the "initial authentication method", and then click [Next].

- 19. If you select "Certificate" for authentication method in Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings on the machine, specify the device certificate. If you select PSK, enter the same PSK text specified on the machine with the pre-shared key.
- 20. Click [Add] in the IP Filter List.
- In [Name], enter an IP Filter name, and then click [Add]. The IP Filter Wizard appears.
- 22. Click [Next].
- 23. Select "My Address" in "Source Address", and then click [Next].
- 24. Select "A specific IP address" in "Destination Address", enter the machine's IP address, and then click [Next].
- 25. Select the protocol type for IPsec, and then click [Next].
- 26. Click [Finish].
- 27. Click [OK].
- 28. Select the IP filter that was just created, and then click [Next].
- 29. Select the IPsec security filter, and then click [Edit].
- 30. Click [Add], select the "Custom" check box, and then click [Settings].
- 31. In "Integrity algorithm", select the authentication algorithm that was specified on the machine in Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Phase 2.
- **32.** In "Encryption algorithm", select the encryption algorithm that was specified on the machine in Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Phase 2.
- 33. In Session Key settings, select "Generate a new key every", and enter the validity period (in seconds) that was specified on the machine in Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Phase 2.
- 34. Click [OK] three times.
- 35. Click [Next].
- 36. Click [Finish].
- 37. Click [OK].
- 38. Click [Close].

The new IP security policy (IPsec settings) is specified.

**39.** Select the security policy that was just created, right click, and then click [Assign].

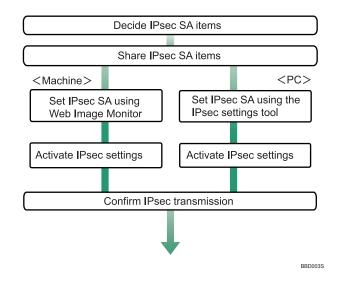
IPsec settings on the computer are enabled.



 To disable the computer's IPsec settings, select the security policy, right click, and then click [Unassign]. If you specify the "Authentication and High Level Encryption" security level in encryption key auto exchange settings, also select the "Master key perfect forward secrecy (PFS)" check box in the Security Filter Properties screen (which appears in step 29). If using PFS in Windows XP, the PFS group number used in phase 2 is automatically negotiated in phase 1 from the Diffie-Hellman group number (set in step 11). Consequently, if you change the security level specified automatic settings on the machine and "User Setting" appears, you must set the same the group number for "Phase 1 Diffie-Hellman Group" and "Phase 2 PFS" on the machine to establish IPsec transmission.

# **Encryption Key Manual Settings Configuration Flow**

This section explains the procedure for specifying encryption key manual settings. This can be specified by the network administrator.



#### **Note**

- Before transmission, SA information is shared and specified by the sender and receiver. To prevent SA information leakage, we recommend that this exchange is not performed over the network.
- After configuring IPsec, you can use "Ping" command to check if the connection is established correctly. However, you cannot use "Ping" command when ICMP is excluded from IPsec transmission. Also, because the response is slow during initial key exchange, it may take some time to confirm that transmission has been established.

#### Specifying Encryption Key Manual Settings

This can be specified using Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(the machine's IP address or host name)/" in the address bar.

When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the machine.

The top page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

- 4. Click [Configuration], and then click [IPsec] under "Security". The IPsec settings page appears.
- 5. Select [Active] for "Encryption Key Manual Settings".
- 6. Click [Edit] under "Encryption Key Manual Settings".
- 7. Set items for encryption key manual settings in "Settings 1".

If you want to make multiple settings, select the settings number and add settings.

- 8. Click [OK].
- 9. Select [Active] for "IPsec:" in "IPsec".
- Set "Exclude HTTPS Transmission" to [Active] if you do not want to use IPsec for HTTPS communication.
- 11. Click [OK].
- 12. Click [Logout].

### telnet Setting Commands

You can use telnet to confirm IPsec settings and make setting changes. This section explains telnet commands for IPsec. To log in as an administrator using telnet, the default login user name is "admin", and the password is blank. For details about logging in to telnet and telnet operations, see "Using telnet", Network Guide.

#### Note

 If you are using a certificate as the authentication method in encryption key auto exchange settings (IKE), install the certificate using Web Image Monitor. A certificate cannot be installed using telnet.

#### ipsec

To display IPsec related settings information, use the "ipsec" command.

#### **Display current settings**

msh> ipsec

Displays the following IPsec settings information:

- IPsec shared settings values
- Encryption key manual settings, SA setting 1-4 values
- Encryption key manual settings, default setting values
- Encryption key auto exchange settings, IKE setting 1-4 values
- Encryption key auto exchange settings, IKE default setting values

#### Display current settings portions

msh> ipsec -p

• Displays IPsec settings information in portions.

#### ipsec manual mode

To display or specify encryption key manual settings, use the "ipsec manual\_mode" command.

#### **Display current settings**

- msh> ipsec manual\_mode
  - Displays the current encryption key manual settings.

#### Specify encryption key manual settings

- msh> ipsec manual\_mode {on|off}
  - To enable encryption key manual settings, set to [on]. To disable settings, set to [off].

#### ipsec exclude

To display or specify protocols excluded by IPsec, use the "ipsec exclude" command.

#### **Display current settings**

msh> ipsec exclude

• Displays the protocols currently excluded from IPsec transmission.

#### Specify protocols to exclude

msh> ipsec exclude {https|dns|dhcp|wins|all} {on|off}

• Specify the protocol, and then enter [on] to exclude it, or [off] to include it for IPsec transmission. Entering [all] specifies all protocols collectively.

#### ipsec manual

To display or specify the encryption key manual settings, use the "ipsec manual" command.

#### **Display current settings**

```
msh> ipsec manual \{1|2|3|4|default\}
```

- To display the settings 1-4, specify the number [1-4].
- To display the default setting, specify [default].
- Not specifying any value displays all of the settings.

#### **Disable settings**

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} disable

- To disable the settings 1-4, specify the setting number [1-4].
- To disable the default settings, specify [default].

#### Specify the local/remote address for settings 1-4

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4} {ipv4|ipv6} local address remote address

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the local address and remote address.
- To specify the local or remote address value, specify masklen by entering [/] and an integer 0-32 if you are specifying an IPv4 address. If you are specifying an IPv6 address, specify masklen by entering [/] and an integer 0-128.
- Not specifying an address value displays the current setting.

#### Specify the address type in default setting

msh> ipsec manual default {ipv4|ipv6|any}

- Specify the address type for the default setting.
- To specify both IPv4 and IPv6, enter [any].

#### Security protocol setting

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} proto {ah|esp|dual}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the security protocol.
- To specify AH, enter [ah]. To specify ESP, enter [esp]. To specify AH and ESP, enter [dual].
- Not specifying a protocol displays the current setting.

#### SPI value setting

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} spi SPI input value SPI output value

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the SPI input and output values.
- Specify a decimal number between 256-4095, for both the SPI input and output values.

#### Encapsulation mode setting

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} mode {transport|tunnel}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the encapsulation mode.
- To specify transport mode, enter [transport]. To specify tunnel mode, enter [tunnel].
- If you have set the address type in the default setting to [any], you cannot use [tunnel] in encapsulation mode.

• Not specifying an encapsulation mode displays the current setting.

#### Tunnel end point setting

msh> ipsec manual  $\{1|2|3|4|default\}$  tunneladdar beginning IP address ending IP address

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the tunnel end point beginning and ending IP address.
- Not specifying either the beginning or ending address displays the current settings.

#### Authentication algorithm and authentication key settings

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} auth {hmac-md5|hmac-sha1} authentication key

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the authentication algorithm, and then set the authentication key.
- If you are setting a hexadecimal number, attach Ox at the beginning.
- If you are setting an ASCII character string, enter it as is.
- Not specifying either the authentication algorithm or key displays the current setting. (The authentication key is not displayed.)

#### Encryption algorithm and encryption key setting

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} encrypt {null|des|3des|aes128|aes192|aes256}
encryption key

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default], specify the encryption algorithm, and then set the encryption key.
- If you are setting a hexadecimal number, attach 0x at the beginning. If you have set the encryption algorithm to [null], enter an encryption key of arbitrary numbers 2-64 digits long.
- If you are setting an ASCII character string, enter it as is. If you have set the encryption algorithm to [null], enter an encryption key of arbitrary numbers 1-32 digits long.
- Not specifying an encryption algorithm or key displays the current setting. (The encryption key is not displayed.)

#### **Reset setting values**

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default|all} clear

• Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and reset the specified setting. Specifying [all] resets all of the settings, including default.

#### ipsec ike

To display or specify the encryption key auto exchange settings, use the "ipsec ike" command.

#### **Display current settings**

```
msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default}
```

- To display the settings 1-4, specify the number [1-4].
- To display the default setting, specify [default].
- Not specifying any value displays all of the settings.

#### **Disable settings**

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4|default} disable

- To disable the settings 1-4, specify the number [1-4].
- To disable the default settings, specify [default].

#### Specify the local/remote address for settings 1-4

msh> ipsec manual {1|2|3|4} {ipv4|ipv6} local address remote address

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4], and the address type to specify local and remote address.
- To set the local or remote address values, specify masklen by entering [/] and an integer 0-32 when settings an IPv4 address. When setting an IPv6 address, specify masklen by entering [/] and an integer 0-128.
- Not specifying an address value displays the current setting.

#### Specify the address type in default setting

msh> ipsec manual default {ipv4|ipv6|any}

- Specify the address type for the default setting.
- To specify both ipv4 and ipv6, enter [any].

#### Security policy setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} proc {apply|bypass|discard}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the security policy for the address specified in the selected setting.
- To apply IPsec to the relevant packets, specify [apply]. To not apply IPsec, specify [bypass].
- If you specify [discard], any packets that IPsec can be applied to are discarded.
- Not specifying a security policy displays the current setting.

#### Security protocol setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} proto {ah|esp|dual}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the security protocol.
- To specify AH, enter [ah]. To specify ESP, enter [esp]. To specify AH and ESP, enter [dual].
- Not specifying a protocol displays the current setting.

#### **IPsec requirement level setting**

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} level {require|use}

• Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the IPsec requirement level.

- If you specify [require], data will not be transmitted when IPsec cannot be used. If you specify [use], data will be sent normally when IPsec cannot be used. When IPsec can be used, IPsec transmission is performed.
- Not specifying a requirement level displays the current setting.

#### Encapsulation mode setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} mode {transport|tunnel}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the encapsulation mode.
- To specify transport mode, enter [transport]. To specify tunnel mode, enter [tunnel].
- If you have set the address type in the default setting to [any], you cannot use [tunnel] in encapsulation mode.
- Not specifying an encapsulation mode displays the current setting.

#### Tunnel end point setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} tunneladdar beginning IP address ending IP address

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the tunnel end point beginning and ending IP address.
- Not specifying either the beginning or ending address displays the current setting.

#### IKE partner authentication method setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} auth {psk|rsasig}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the authentication method.
- Specify [psk] to use a shared key as the authentication method. Specify [rsasig] to use a certificate at the authentication method.
- You must also specify the PSK character string when you select [psk].
- Note that if you select "Certificate", the certificate for IPsec must be installed and specified before it can be used. To install and specify the certificate use Web Image Monitor.

#### PSK character string setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} psk PSK character string

- If you select PSK as the authentication method, enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the PSK character string.
- Specify the character string in ASCII characters. There can be no abbreviations.

#### ISAKMP SA (phase 1) hash algorithm setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph1 hash {md5|sha1}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the ISAKMP SA (phase 1) hash algorithm.
- To use MD5, enter [md5]. To use SHA1, enter [sha1].

• Not specifying the hash algorithm displays the current setting.

#### ISAKMP SA (phase 1) encryption algorithm setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph1 encrypt {des|3des}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the ISAKMP SA (phase 1) encryption algorithm.
- To use DES, enter [des]. To use 3DES, enter [3des].
- Not specifying an encryption algorithm displays the current setting.

#### ISAKMP SA (phase 1) Diffie-Hellman group setting

```
msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph1 dhgroup {1|2|14}
```

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the ISAKMP SA (phase 1) Diffie-Hellman group number.
- Specify the group number to be used.
- Not specifying a group number displays the current setting.

#### ISAKMP SA (phase 1) validity period setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph1 lifetime validity period

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the ISAKMP SA (phase 1) validity period.
- Enter the validity period (in seconds) from 300 to 172800.
- Not specifying a validity period displays the current setting.

#### IPsec SA (phase 2) authentication algorithm setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph2 auth {hmac-md5|hmac-sha1}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the IPsec SA (phase 2) authentication algorithm.
- Separate multiple encryption algorithm entries with a comma (,). The current setting values are displayed in order of highest priority.
- Not specifying an authentication algorithm displays the current setting.

#### IPsec SA (phase 2) encryption algorithm setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph2 encrypt {null|des|3des|aes128|aes192| aes256}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the IPsec SA (phase 2) encryption algorithm.
- Separate multiple encryption algorithm entries with a comma (,). The current setting values are displayed in order of highest priority.
- Not specifying an encryption algorithm displays the current setting.

### IPsec SA (phase 2) PFS setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph2 pfs {none|1|2|14}

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the IPsec SA (phase 2) Diffie-Hellman group number.
- Specify the group number to be used.
- Not specifying a group number displays the current setting.

#### IPsec SA (phase 2) validity period setting

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default} ph2 lifetime validity period

- Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and specify the IPsec SA (phase 2) validity period.
- Enter the validity period (in seconds) from 300 to 172800.
- Not specifying a validity period displays the current setting.

#### **Reset setting values**

msh> ipsec ike {1|2|3|4|default|all} clear

• Enter the separate setting number [1-4] or [default] and reset the specified setting. Specifying [all] resets all of the settings, including default.

# Authentication by telnet

This section explains Authentication by telnet. When using telnet, the default login name for administrator login is "admin" and the password is blank. For details on how to login to telnet, see "Using telnet", Network Guide.

# "authfree" Command

Use the "authfree" command to display and configure authentication exclusion control settings. If you use the "authfree" command in telnet, you can exclude printer job authentication and specify an IP address range. The authentication exclusion control display and setting methods are explained below.

#### **View Settings**

msh> authfree

If print job authentication exclusion is not specified, authentication exclusion control is not displayed.

#### IPv4 address settings

msh> authfree "ID" range\_addr1 range\_addr2

#### IPv6 address settings

msh> authfree "ID" range6\_addr1 range6\_addr2

#### IPv6 address mask settings

msh> authfree "ID" mask6\_addr1 masklen

#### Parallel/USB settings

msh> authfree [parallel|usb] [on|off]

- To enable authfree, specify "on". To disable authfree, specify "off".
- Always specify the interface.

#### Authentication exclusion control initialization

msh> authfree flush

#### Note

In both IPv4 and IPv6 environments, up to five access ranges can be registered and selected.

# 6. Specifying the Extended Security Functions

This chapter describes the machine's extended security features and how to specify them.

# **Specifying the Extended Security Functions**

In addition to providing basic security through user authentication and administrator specified access limits on the machine, security can also be increased by encrypting transmitted data and data in the Address Book. If you need extended security, specify the machine's extended security functions before using the machine.

This section outlines the extended security functions and how to specify them.

For details about when to use each function, see the corresponding chapters.

## **Changing the Extended Security Functions**

To change the extended security functions, display the extended security screen as follows.

Administrators can change the extended security functions according to their role. For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

#### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# Procedure for Changing the Extended Security Functions

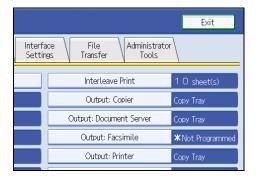
This section describes how to Change the Extended Security Functions.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

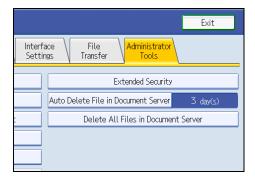
2. Press [System Settings].



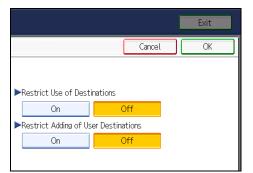
3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Extended Security].



5. Press the setting you want to change, and change the setting.



- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Settings

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

#### **Driver Encryption Key**

This can be specified by the network administrator. Encrypt the password transmitted when specifying user authentication. If you register the encryption key specified with the machine in the driver, passwords are encrypted. For details, see the printer driver Help, LAN Fax driver Help, or TWAIN driver Help.

#### **Encrypt Address Book**

This can be specified by the user administrator. Encrypt the data in the machine's Address Book.

For details on protecting data in the Address Book, see "Protecting the Address Book".

- On
- Off

#### **Restrict Use of Destinations**

This can be specified by the user administrator.

The available fax and scanner destinations are limited to the destinations registered in the Address Book.

A user cannot directly enter the destinations for transmission.

If you specify the setting to receive e-mails via SMTP, you cannot use [Restrict Use of Destinations].

The destinations searched by "Search LDAP" can be used.

For details about preventing unauthorized transmission, see "Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission".

• On

#### • Off

#### **Restrict Adding of User Destinations**

This can be specified by the user administrator.

When "Restrict Use of Destinations" is set to [Off], after entering a fax or scanner destination directly, you can register it in the Address Book by pressing [Program Dest.]. If [On] is selected for this setting, [Program Dest.] does not appear. If you set "Restrict Adding of User Destinations" to [On], users can specify destinations directly, but cannot use [Program Dest.] to register data in the Address Book. When this setting is made, only the user administrator can change the Address Book.

- On
- Off

#### **Restrict Display of User Information**

This can be specified if user authentication is specified. When the job history is checked using a network connection for which authentication is not available, all personal information can be displayed as "\*\*\*\*\*\*". For example, when someone not authenticated as an administrator checks the job history using SNMP in SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, personal information can be displayed as "\*\*\*\*\*\*" so that users cannot be identified. Because information identifying registered users cannot be viewed, unauthorized users are prevented from obtaining information about the registered files.

- On
- Off

### **Enhance File Protection**

This can be specified by the file administrator. By specifying a password, you can limit operations such as printing, deleting, and sending files, and can prevent unauthorized people from accessing the files. However, it is still possible for the password to be cracked.

By specifying "Enhance File Protection", files are locked and so become inaccessible if an invalid password is entered ten times. This can protect the files from unauthorized access attempts in which a password is repeatedly guessed.

The locked files can only be unlocked by the file administrator. When "Enhance File Protection" is specified, (1) appears in the lower right corner of the screen.

When files are locked, you cannot select them even if the correct password is entered.

- On
- Off

#### Settings by SNMP v1 and v2

This can be specified by the network administrator. When the machine is accessed using the SNMPv1, v2 protocol, authentication cannot be performed, allowing machine administrator settings such as the paper setting to be changed. If you select [Prohibit], the setting can be viewed but not specified with SNMPv1, v2.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit

#### **Restrict Use of Simple Encryption**

This can be specified by the network administrator. When a sophisticated encryption method cannot be enabled, simple encryption will be applied. For example, when using User Management Tool and Address Management in Smart Device Monitor for Admin to edit the Address Book, or DeskTopBinder and ScanRouter delivery software and SSL/TLS cannot be enabled, make this setting [Off] to enable simple encryption. When SSL/TLS can be enabled, make this setting [On].

For details about specifying SSL/TLS, see "Setting the SSL / TSL Encryption Mode".

If you select [On], specify the encryption setting using the printer driver.

- On
- Off

#### Transfer to Fax Receiver

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

If you use [Forwarding] or [Transfer Request] under the fax function, files stored in the machine can be transferred or delivered.

If you select [Prohibit] for this setting, stored files cannot be transferred by [Forwarding] and [Transfer Request].

Use this setting, to prevent the stored files being transferred by mistake.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit

If you select [Prohibit] for this setting, the following functions are disabled:

- Polling Transmission
- Transfer Request
- Forwarding
- Transfer Box
- Delivery from Personal Box
- Information Box
- Delivery of Mail Received via SMTP

#### Authenticate Current Job

This can be specified by the machine administrator. This setting lets you specify whether or not authentication is required for operations such as canceling jobs under the copier and printer functions.

If you select [Login Privilege], authorized users and the machine administrator can operate the machine. When this is selected, authentication is not required for users who logged on to the machine before [Login Privilege] was selected.

If you select [Access Privilege], users who canceled a copy or print job in progress and the machine administrator can operate the machine.

Even if you select [Login Privilege] and log on to the machine, you cannot cancel a copy or print job in progress if you are not authorized to use the copy and printer functions.

You can specify [Authenticate Current Job] only if [User Authentication Management] was specified.

- Login Privilege
- Access Privilege
- Off

#### **Password Policy**

This can be specified by the user administrator.

The password policy setting is effective only if [Basic Auth.] is specified.

This setting lets you specify [Complexity Setting] and [Minimum Character No.] for the password. By making this setting, you can limit the available passwords to only those that meet the conditions specified in [Complexity Setting] and [Minimum Character No.].

If you select [Level 1], specify the password using a combination of two types of characters selected from upper-case letters, lower-case letters, decimal numbers, and symbols such as #.

If you select [Level 2], specify the password using a combination of three types of characters selected from upper-case letters, lower-case letters, decimal numbers, and symbols such as #.

- Level 2
- Level 1
- Off
- Minimum Character No. (0)

#### **@Remote Service**

Communication via HTTPS for @Remote Service is disabled if you select [Prohibit].

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit

#### Update Firmware

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

Specify whether to allow firmware updates on the machine. Firmware update means having the service representative update the firmware or updating the firmware via the network.

If you select [Prohibit], firmware on the machine cannot be updated.

If you select [Do not Prohibit], there are no restrictions on firmware updates

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit

#### **Change Firmware Structure**

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

Specify whether to prevent changes in the machine's firmware structure. The Change Firmware Structure function detects when the SD card is inserted, removed or replaced.

If you select [Prohibit], the machine stops during startup when a firmware structure change is detected and a message requesting administrator login is displayed. After the machine administrator logs in, the machine finishes startup with the updated firmware.

The administrator can confirm if the updated structure change is permissible or not by checking the firmware version displayed on the control panel screen. If the firmware structure change is not permissible, contact your service representative before logging in.

When Change Firmware Structure is set to [Prohibit], administrator authentication must be enabled.

After [Prohibit] is specified, turn off administrator authentication once, and the next time administrator authentication is specified, the setting will return to the default, [Do not Prohibit].

If you select [Do not Prohibit], firmware structure change detection is disabled.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit

#### Reference

- p.141 "Protecting the Address Book"
- p.130 "Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission"
- p.204 "Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode"

# **Other Security Functions**

This section explains settings for preventing information leaks, and functions that you can restrict to further increase security.

### **Fax Function**

#### Not Displaying Destinations and Senders in Reports and Lists

In [Facsimile Features], you can specify whether to display destinations and sender names by setting "Switch 4, Bit No. 4" and "Switch 4, Bit No. 5" in [Parameter Settings], under [Initial Settings]. Making this setting helps prevent information leaks, because unintended users cannot read destinations and sender names on both the sending and receiving side. For details about "Not Displaying Destinations and Senders in Reports and Lists", see "Facsimile Features", General Settings Guide.

#### Stored RX File User Setting

In [Facsimile Features], you can specify which users can manage fax files stored on the hard disk by setting [Stored Reception File User Setting] to [On], under [Initial Settings]. To access the machine over the network, specified users must enter their user codes or login user names and passwords. Only authorized users can manage fax files stored on the hard disk. For details about Stored RX File User Setting, see "Facsimile Features", General Settings Guide.

#### Printing the Journal

When making authentication settings for users, to prevent personal information in transmission history being printed, set the Journal to not be printed. Also, if more than 200 transmissions are made, transmissions shown in the Journal are overwritten each time a further transmission is made. To prevent the Transmission History from being overwritten, perform the following procedures:

- In [Facsimile Features], go to [Initial Settings], [Parameter Settings] "Switch 03, Bit 7", and change the setting for automatically printing the Journal.
- In [Facsimile Features], go to [Initial Settings], [Parameter Settings] "Switch 21, Bit 4", and set "Transmit Journal by E-mail" to ON.

#### **Scanner Function**

#### Print & Delete Scanner Journal

To prevent personal information in the transmission/delivery history being printed automatically, set user authentication and the journal will specify [Do not Print: Disable Send] automatically. If you do this, the scanner is automatically disabled when the journal history exceeds 250 transmissions/ deliveries. When this happens, click [Print Scanner Journal] or [Delete Scanner Journal]. To print the scanner journal automatically, set [On] for [Print & Delete Scanner Journal].

# Weekly Timer Code

If the power is turned off when Weekly Timer Mode is set, the Weekly Timer Code settings must be enabled and you must enter a code before you can turn the power back on.

### Specifying the Weekly Timer Code

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



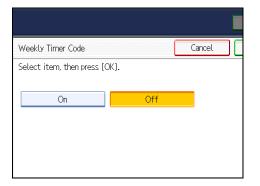
3. Press [Timer Settings].

Settings					
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interface Settings		File Transfer	Administ Tool
hange / Delete User Text Interleave		e Print			
ound	Off			Output: (	Copier
eeper	On		C	Output: Docun	nent Server
Display	Up			Output: Fa	icsimile
ority	Copier			Output: F	Printer

4. Press [Weekly Timer Code].



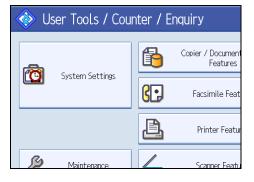
5. Press [On].



# Canceling Weekly Timer Code

This can be specified by the machine administrator.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



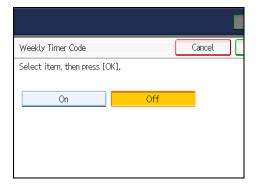
# 3. Press [Timer Settings].

Settings	;		
y Paper ttings	Timer Settings	Interface Settings	
hange / Del	ete User Text		Interleave Print
ound	Off		Output: Copier
eeper	On		Output: Document Serve
Display	Up	Up Output: Facsimile	
ority	Copier	Copier Output: Printe	

4. Press [Weekly Timer Code].



5. Press [Off].



# Limiting Machine Operation to Customers Only

The machine can be set so that operation is impossible without administrator authentication.

The machine can be set to prohibit operation without administrator authentication and also prohibit remote registration in the Address Book by a service representative.

We maintain strict security when handling customers' data. Administrator authentication prevents us from operating the machine without administrator permission.

Use the following settings.

Service Mode Lock

#### Settings

#### Service Mode Lock

This can be specified by the machine administrator. Service mode is used by a service representative for inspection or repair. If you set the service mode lock to [On], service mode cannot be used unless the machine administrator logs on to the machine and cancels the service mode lock to allow the service representative to operate the machine for inspection and repair. This ensures that the inspection and repair are done under the supervision of the machine administrator.

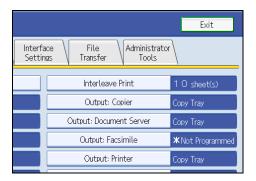
# Specifying Service Mode Lock Preparation

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

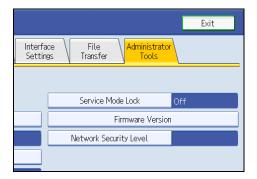
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



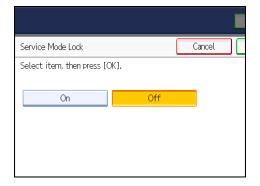
3. Press [Administrator Tools].



4. Press [Service Mode Lock].



5. Press [On], and then press [OK].



A confirmation message appears.

- 6. Press [Yes].
- 7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

# **Canceling Service Mode Lock**

For a service representative to carry out inspection or repair in service mode, the machine administrator must log on to the machine and cancel the service mode lock.

For details about logging on and logging off with administrator authentication, see "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication", "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication".

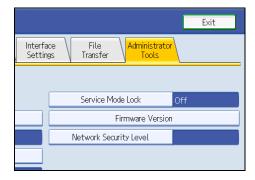
- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

		Exit
Interfa Setting		r
	Interleave Print	10 sheet(s)
	Output: Copier	Copy Tray
	Output: Document Server Copy Tray	
	Output: Facsimile	stNot Programmed
	Output: Printer	Copy Tray

4. Press [Service Mode Lock].



5. Press [Off] and then press [OK].

6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The service representative can switch to service mode.

# Reference

- p.35 "Logging on Using Administrator Authentication"
- p.36 "Logging off Using Administrator Authentication"

6. Specifying the Extended Security Functions

# 7. Troubleshooting

This chapter describes what to do if the machine does not function properly.

# **Authentication Does Not Work Properly**

This section explains what to do if a user cannot operate the machine because of a problem related to user authentication. Refer to this section if a user comes to you with such a problem.

# A Message Appears

This section explains how to deal with problems if a message appears on the screen during user authentication.

The most common messages are explained. If some other message appears, deal with the problem according to the information contained in the message.

Messages	Cause	Solutions
"You do not have the privileges to use this function."	The authority to use the function is not specified.	<ul> <li>If this appears when trying to use a function: The function is not specified in the Address Book management setting as being available. The user administrator must decide whether to authorize use of the function and then assign the authority.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>If this appears when trying to specify a default setting: The administrator differs depending on the default settings you wish to specify. Using the list of settings, the administrator responsible must decide whether to authorize use of the function.</li> </ul>

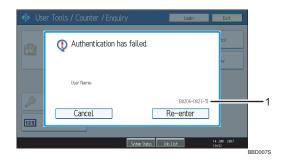
Messages	Cause	Solutions
"Failed to obtain URL."	The machine cannot connect to the server or cannot establish communication.	
"Failed to obtain URL."	The machine is connected to the server, but the UA service is not responding properly.	Make sure the UA service is specified correctly.
"Failed to obtain URL."	SSL is not specified correctly on the server.	Specify SSL using Authentication Manager.
"Failed to obtain URL."	Server authentication failed.	Make sure server authentication is specified correctly on the machine.
"Authentication has failed."	The entered login user name or login password is incorrect.	Ask the user administrator for the correct login user name and login password. See the error codes below for possible solutions: B,W,L,I 0104-000 B,W,L,I 0206-003 W,L,I 0406-003
"Authentication has failed."	Authentication failed because no more users can be registered. (The number of users registered in the Address Book has reached capacity.)	Delete unnecessary user addresses. See the error codes below for possible solutions: W,L,I 0612-005
"Authentication has failed."	Cannot access the authentication server when using Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication.	A network or server error may have occurred. Confirm the network in use with the LAN administrator. If an error code appears, follow the instructions next to the error code in the table below.

Messages	Cause	Solutions
"The selected file(s) contained file (s) without access privileges. Only file(s) with access privileges will be deleted."	You have tried to delete files without the authority to do so.	Files can be deleted by the file creator (owner) or file administrator. To delete a file which you are not authorized to delete, contact the file creator (owner).

## An Error Code Appears

When authentication fails, the message "Authentication has failed." appears with an error code. The following tables list the error codes, likely causes of the problems they indicate, and what you can do to resolve those problems. If the error code that appears is not on this table, take a note and contact your service representative.

#### **Error Code Display Position**



#### 1. error code

An error code appears.

## **Basic Authentication**

Error Code	Cause	Solution
B0103-000	A TWAIN operation occurred during authentication.	Make sure no other user is logged on to the machine, and then try again.
B0104-000	Failed to decrypt password.	<ol> <li>A password error occurred.</li> <li>Make sure the password is entered correctly.</li> <li>"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is enabled.</li> </ol>

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		The administrator has restricted use of simple encryption. You can use the encryption key if it has been specified in the driver.
		3. A driver encryption key error occurred.
		Make sure that the encryption key is correctly specified on the driver.
B0105-000	A login user name was not specified but a DeskTopBinder operation was performed.	Specify the DeskTopBinder login user name correctly.
B0206-002	<ol> <li>A login user name or password error occurred.</li> </ol>	Make sure the login user name and password are entered correctly and then log in.
B0206-002	2. The user attempted authentication from an application on the "System Settings" screen, where only the administrator has authentication ability.	Only the administrator has login privileges on this screen. Log in as a general user from the application's login screen.
B0206-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If the account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.
B0207-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
B0208-000	The account is locked because you have reached the maximum number of failed authentication attempts allowed.	Ask the user administrator to unlock the account.

## Windows Authentication

Error Code	Cause	Solution
W0103-000	A TWAIN operation occurred during authentication.	Make sure no other user is logged on to the machine, and then try again.
W0104-000	Failed to encrypt password.	<ol> <li>A password error occurred. Make sure the password is entered correctly.</li> <li>"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is enabled.</li> <li>The administrator has restricted use of simple encryption. You can use the encryption key if it has been specified in the driver.</li> <li>A driver encryption key error occurred.</li> <li>Make sure that the encryption key is correctly specified on the driver.</li> </ol>
W0105-000	A login user name was not specified but a DeskTopBinder operation was performed.	Set the DeskTopBinder login user name correctly.
W0206-002	The user attempted authentication from an application on the "System Settings" screen, where only the administrator has authentication ability.	Only the administrator has login privileges on this screen. Log in as a general user from the application's login screen.
W0206-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If the account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.
W0207-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address	Wait a few minutes and then try again.

Error Code	Cause	Solution
	Book is being used at another location.	
W0406-101	Authentication cannot be completed because of the high number of authentication attempts.	Wait a few minutes and then try again. If the situation does not return to normal, make sure that an authentication attack is not occurring. Notify the administrator of the screen message by e-mail, and check the system log for signs of an authentication attack.
W0400-102	Kerberos authentication failed because the server or security module is not functioning correctly.	<ol> <li>Make sure that the server is functioning properly.</li> <li>Make sure that the security module is installed.</li> </ol>
W0406-104	1. Cannot connect to the authentication server.	<ol> <li>Make sure that connection to the authentication server is possible.</li> <li>Use the PING Command to check the connection.</li> </ol>
W0406-104	2. A login name or password error occurred.	Make sure that the user is registered on the server. Use a registered login user name and password.
W0406-104	3. A domain name error occurred.	Make sure that the Windows authentication domain name is specified correctly.
W0406-104	4. Cannot resolve the domain name.	Specify the IP address in the domain name and confirm that authentication is successful. If authentication was successful: 1. If the top-level domain name is specified in the domain name

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		(such as domainname.xxx.com), make sure that DNS is specified in "Interface Settings".
		2. If a NetBIOS domain name is specified in domain name (such as DOMAINNAME), make sure that WINS is specified in "Interface Settings".
		Authentication is unsuccessful:
		<ol> <li>Make sure that Restrict LM/ NTLM is not set in either</li> <li>"Domain Controller Security Policy" or "Domain Security Policy".</li> </ol>
		Authentication is rejected because NTLMv2 is not supported.
		2. Make sure that the ports for the domain control firewall and the firewall on the machine to the domain control connection path are open.
		If you are using a Windows firewall, open "Network Connection Properties". Then click detail settings, Windows firewall settings, permit exceptions settings. Click the exceptions tab and specify numbers 137, 139 as the exceptions.
		In "Network Connection" properties, open TCP/IP properties. Then click detail settings, WINS, and then check the "Enable NetBIOS over TCP/IP" box and set number 137 to "Open".

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		<ol> <li>Kerberos authentication settings are not correctly configured.</li> </ol>
		Make sure the realm name, KDC (Key Distribution Center) name and corresponding domain name are specified correctly.
		2. The KDC and machine timing do not match.
W0406-104	5. Kerberos authentication failed.	Authentication will fail if the difference between the KDC and machine timing is more than 5 minutes. Make sure the timing matches.
		3. Kerberos authentication will fail if the realm name is specified in lower-case letters. Make sure the realm name is specified in capital letters.
		4. Kerberos authentication will fail if automatic retrieval for KDC fails.
		Ask your service representative to make sure the KDC retrieval settings are set to "automatic retrieval".
		If automatic retrieval is not functioning properly, switch to manual retrieval.
W0400-105	1. The UserPrincipleName (user@domainname.xxx.com) form is being used for the login user name.	The user group cannot be obtained if the UserPrincipleName (user@domainname.xxx.com) form is used.
		Use "sAMAccountName (user)" to log in, because this

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		account allows you to obtain the user group.
		Make sure the user group's group scope is set to "Global Group" and the group type is set to "Security" in group properties.
		Make sure the account has been added to user group.
W0400-105	2. Current settings do not allow group retrieval.	Make sure the user group name registered on the machine and the group name on the DC (domain controller) are exactly the same. The DC is case sensitive.
		Make sure that Use Auth. Info at Logon has been specified in Auth. Info in the user account registered on the machine.
		If there is more than one DC, make sure that a confidential relationship has been configured between each DC.
W0400-106	The domain name cannot be resolved.	Make sure that DNS/WINS is specified in the domain name in "Interface Settings".
W0400-200	Due to the high number of authentication attempts, all resources are busy.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
W0400-202	1. The SSL settings on the authentication server and the machine do not match.	Make sure the SSL settings on the authentication server and the machine match.
W0400-202	2. The user entered sAMAccountName in the user name to log in.	If a user enters sAMAccountName as the login user name, Idap_bind fails in a parent/subdomain environment. Use

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		UserPrincipleName for the login name instead.
W0406-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If the account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.
W0409-000	Authentication timed out because the server did not respond.	Check the network configuration, or settings on the authenticating server.
W0511-000	The authentication server login name is the same as a user name already registered on the machine. (Names are distinguished by the unique attribute specified in LDAP authentication settings.)	<ol> <li>Delete the old, duplicated name or change the login name.</li> <li>If the authentication server has just been changed, delete the old name on the server.</li> </ol>
W0607-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
W0606-004	Authentication failed because the user name contains language that cannot be used by general users.	Do not use "other", "admin", "supervisor" or "HIDE*" in general user accounts.
W0612-005	Authentication failed because no more users can be registered. (The number of users registered in the Address Book has reached capacity.)	Ask the user administrator to delete unused user accounts in the Address Book.
W0707-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.

#### LDAP Authentication

Error Code	Cause	Solution
L0103-000	A TWAIN operation occurred during authentication.	Make sure no other user is logged on to the machine, and then try again.
L0104-000	Failed to encrypt password.	<ol> <li>A password error occurred. Make sure the password is entered correctly.</li> <li>"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is enabled.</li> <li>The administrator has restricted use of simple encryption. You can use the encryption key if it has been specified in the driver.</li> <li>A driver encryption key error occurred.</li> <li>Make sure that the encryption key is correctly specified on the driver.</li> </ol>
L0105-000	A login user name was not specified but a DeskTopBinder operation was performed.	Set the DeskTopBinder login user name correctly.
L0206-002	A user attempted authentication from an application on the "System Settings" screen, where only the administrator has authentication ability.	Only the administrator has login privileges on this screen. Log in as a general user from the application's login screen.
L0206-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If the account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.
L0207-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address	Wait a few minutes and then try again.

Error Code	Cause	Solution
	Book is being used at another location.	
L0306-018	The LDAP server is not correctly configured.	Make sure that a connection test is successful with the current LDAP server configuration.
L0307-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
L0406-200	Authentication cannot be completed because of the high number of authentication attempts.	Wait a few minutes and then try again. If the situation does not return to normal, make sure that an authentication attack is not occurring. Notify the administrator of the screen message by e-mail, and check the system log for signs of an authentication attack.
L0406-201	Authentication is disabled in the LDAP server settings.	Change the LDAP server settings in administrator tools, in "System Settings".
		1. Make sure that a connection test is successful with the current LDAP server configuration.
L0406-202 L0406-203	1. There is an error in the LDAP authentication settings, LDAP server, or network configuration.	If connection is not successful, there might be an error in the network settings.
		Check the domain name or DNS settings in "Interface Settings".
		2. Make sure the LDAP server is specified correctly in the LDAP authentication settings.
		3. Make sure the login name attribute is entered correctly in

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		the LDAP authentication settings. 4. Make sure the SSL settings are supported by the LDAP server.
L0406-202 L0406-203	2. A login user name or password error occurred.	<ol> <li>Make sure the login user name and password are entered correctly.</li> <li>Make sure a useable login name is registered on the machine.</li> <li>Authentication will fail in the following cases:</li> <li>If the login user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").</li> <li>If the login user name exceeds 128 bytes.</li> </ol>
L0406-202 L0406-203	3. There is an error in the simple encryption method.	<ol> <li>Authentication will fail if the password is left blank in simple authentication mode.</li> <li>To allow blank passwords, contact your service representative.</li> <li>In simple authentication mode, the DN of the login user name is obtained in the user account.</li> <li>Authentication fails if the DN cannot be obtained.</li> <li>Make sure there are no errors in the server name, login user name/password, or information entered for the search filter.</li> </ol>

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		<ol> <li>Kerberos authentication settings are not correctly configured.</li> </ol>
		Make sure the realm name, KDC (Key Distribution Center) name, and supporting domain name are specified correctly.
		2. The KDC and machine timing do not match.
L0406-204	Kerberos authentication failed.	Authentication will fail if the difference between the KDC and machine timing is more than 5 minutes. Make sure the timing matches.
		3. Kerberos authentication will fail if the realm name is specified in lower-case letters. Make sure the realm name is specified in capital letters.
L0400-210	Failed to obtain user information in LDAP search.	The login attribute's search criteria might not be specified or the specified search information is unobtainable. Make sure the login name attribute is specified correctly.
L0406-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If the account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.
L0409-000	Authentication timed out because the server did not respond.	Contact the server or network administrator. If the situation does not return to normal, contact your service representative.

Error Code	Cause	Solution
L0511-000	The authentication server login name is the same as a user name already registered on the machine. (Names are distinguished by the unique attribute specified in the LDAP authentication settings.)	<ol> <li>Delete the old, duplicated name or change the login name.</li> <li>If the authentication server has just been changed, delete the old name on the server.</li> </ol>
L0607-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
L606-004	Authentication failed because the user name contains language that cannot be used by general users.	Do not use "other", "admin", "supervisor" or "HIDE*" in general user accounts.
L0612-005	Authentication failed because no more users can be registered. (The number of users registered in the Address Book has reached capacity.)	Ask the user administrator to delete unused user accounts in the Address Book.
L0707-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.

### Integration Server Authentication

Error Code	Cause	Solution
10103-000	A TWAIN operation occurred during authentication.	Make sure no other user is logged on to the machine, and then try again.
10104-000	Failed to decrypt password.	<ol> <li>A password error occurred.</li> <li>Make sure the password is entered correctly.</li> <li>"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is enabled.</li> </ol>

7

Error Code	Cause	Solution
		The administrator has restricted use of simple encryption. You can use the encryption key if it has been specified in the driver.
		3. A driver encryption key error occurred.
		Make sure that the encryption key is correctly specified on the driver.
10105-000	A login user name was not specified but a DeskTopBinder operation was performed.	Set the DeskTopBinder login user name correctly.
10206-002	A user attempted authentication from an application on the "System Settings" screen, where only the administrator has authentication ability.	Only the administrator has login privileges on this screen. Log in as a general user from the application's login screen.
10206-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If the account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.
10207-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
10406-003	An authentication error occurred because the user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").	Recreate the account if the account name contains any of these prohibited characters. If account name was entered incorrectly, enter it correctly and log in again.

Error Code	Cause	Solution
10406-301	1. The URL could not be obtained.	Obtain the URL using Obtain URL in Integration Server authentication.
		<ol> <li>Make sure the login user name and password are entered correctly.</li> </ol>
		2. Make sure that a useable login name is registered on the machine.
10406-301	2. A login user name or password error occurred.	Authentication will fail in the following cases.
		If the login user name contains a space, colon (:), or quotation mark (").
		If the login user name exceeds 128 bytes.
	Authentication timed out because the server did not respond.	Contact the server or network administrator.
10409-000		If the situation does not return to normal, contact your service representative.
10511-000	The authentication server login name is the same as a user name already registered on the machine. (Names are distinguished by the unique attribute specified in the LDAP authentication settings.)	<ol> <li>Delete the old, duplicated name or change the login name.</li> <li>If the authentication server has just been changed, delete the old name on the server.</li> </ol>
10607-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.
10606-004	Authentication failed because the user name contains language that cannot be used by general users.	Do not use "other", "admin", "supervisor" or "HIDE*" in general user accounts.

Error Code	Cause	Solution
10612-005	Authentication failed because no more users can be registered. (The number of users registered in the Address Book has reached capacity.)	Ask the user administrator to delete unused user accounts in the Address Book.
10707-001	An authentication error occurred because the Address Book is being used at another location.	Wait a few minutes and then try again.

## Machine Cannot Be Operated

If the following conditions arise while users are operating the machine, provide the instructions on how to deal with them.

Condition	Cause	Solution
Cannot print using the printer driver or connect using the TWAIN driver.	User authentication has been rejected.	Confirm the user name and login name with the administrator of the network in use if using Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, or Integration Server Authentication. Confirm with the user administrator if using basic authentication.
Cannot print using the printer driver or connect using the TWAIN driver.	The encryption key specified in the driver does not match the machine's driver encryption key.	Specify the driver encryption key registered in the machine. See "Driver Encryption Key".
Cannot authenticate using the TWAIN driver.	Another user is logging on to the machine.	Wait for the user to log off.
Cannot authenticate using the TWAIN driver.	Authentication is taking time because of operating conditions.	Make sure the LDAP server setting is correct. Make sure the network settings are correct.

Condition	Cause	Solution
Cannot authenticate using the TWAIN driver.	Authentication is not possible while the machine is editing the Address Book data.	Wait until editing of the Address Book data is complete.
After starting "User Management Tool" or "Address Management Tool" in SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and entering the correct login user name and password, a message that an incorrect password has been entered appears.	"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is not set correctly. Alternatively, "SSL/TLS" has been enabled although the required certificate is not installed in the computer.	Set "Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" to [On]. Alternatively, enable "SSL/TLS", install the server certificate in the machine, and then install the certificate in the computer. See "Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode".
Cannot log on to the machine using [Document Server: Authentication/Encryption] in DeskTopBinder.	"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is not set correctly. Alternatively, "SSL/TLS" has been enabled although the required certificate is not installed in the computer.	Set "Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" to [On]. Alternatively, enable "SSL/TLS", install the server certificate in the machine, and then install the certificate in the computer. See "Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode".
Cannot access the machine using ScanRouter EX Professional V3 / ScanRouter EX Enterprise V2.	"Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" is not set correctly. Alternatively, "SSL/TLS" has been enabled although the required certificate is not installed in the computer.	Set "Restrict Use of Simple Encryption" to [On]. Alternatively, enable "SSL/TLS", install the server certificate in the machine, and then install the certificate in the computer. See "Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode".
Cannot connect to the ScanRouter delivery software.	The ScanRouter delivery software may not be supported by the machine.	Update to the latest version of the ScanRouter delivery software.
Cannot access the machine using ScanRouter EX Professional V2.	ScanRouter EX Professional V2 does not support user authentication.	ScanRouter EX Professional V2 does not support user authentication.
Cannot log off when using the copying or scanner functions.	The original has not been scanned completely.	When the original has been scanned completely, press [#],

Condition	Cause	Solution
		remove the original, and then log off.
"Program Dest." does not appear on the fax or scanner screen for specifying destinations.	"Restrict Adding of User Destinations" is set to [Off] in "Restrict Use of Destinations" in "Extended Security", so only the user administrator can register destinations in the Address Book.	Registration must be done by the user administrator.
User authentication is enabled, yet stored files do not appear.	User authentication may have been disabled while [All Users] is not specified.	Re-enable user authentication, and then enable [All Users] for the files that did not appear. For details about enabling [All Users], see "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files".
User authentication is enabled, yet destinations specified using the machine do not appear.	User authentication may have been disabled while [All Users] is not specified.	Re-enable user authentication, and then enable [All Users] for the destinations that did not appear. For details about enabling [All Users], see "Protecting the Address Book".
Cannot print when user authentication has been specified.	User authentication may not be specified in the printer driver.	Specify user authentication in the printer driver. For details, see the printer driver Help.
If you try to interrupt a job while copying or scanning, an authentication screen appears.	With this machine, you can log off while copying or scanning. If you try to interrupt copying or scanning after logging off, an authentication screen appears.	Only the user who executed a copying or scanning job can interrupt it. Wait until the job has completed or consult an administrator or the user who executed the job.
After you execute "Encrypt Address Book", the "Exit" message does not appear.	The hard disk may be faulty. The file may be corrupt.	Contact your service representative.

## Reference

- p.194 "Driver Encryption Key"
- p.204 "Setting the SSL / TLS Encryption Mode"
- p.116 "Specifying Access Permission for Stored Files"
- p.141 "Protecting the Address Book"

7

7. Troubleshooting

# 8. Appendix

## **Supervisor Operations**

The supervisor can delete an administrator's password and specify a new one.

If any of the administrators forget their passwords or if any of the administrators change, the supervisor can assign a new password. If logged on using the supervisor's user name and password, you cannot use normal functions or specify defaults.

Log on as the supervisor only to change an administrator's password.

#### Comportant 🗋

- The default login user name is "supervisor" and the login password is blank. We recommend changing the login user name and login password.
- When registering login user names and login passwords, you can specify up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols. Keep in mind that user names and passwords are case-sensitive.
- Be sure not to forget the supervisor login user name and login password. If you do forget them, a service representative will to have to return the machine to its default state. This will result in all data in the machine being lost and the service call may not be free of charge.

#### Note

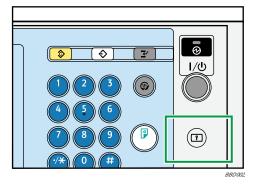
- You cannot specify the same login user name for the supervisor and the administrators.
- Using Web Image Monitor, you can log on as the supervisor and delete an administrator's password or specify a new one.

#### Logging on as the Supervisor

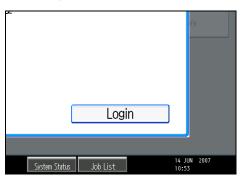
If administrator authentication has been specified, log on using the supervisor login user name and login password. This section describes how to log on.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press the [Login/Logout] key.



3. Press [Login].



4. Enter a login user name, and then press [OK].

Login User Name
Enter the login user name, then press [OK].
- 0/128
<u>` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</u>
q w e r t y u
asdfghj
z x c v b n m

When you assign the administrator for the first time, enter "supervisor".

5. Enter a login password, and then press [OK].

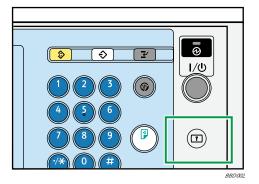


The message, "Authenticating... Please wait." appears.

## Logging off as the Supervisor

If administrator authentication has been specified, be sure to log off after completing settings. This section describes how to log off after completing settings.

1. Press the [Login/Logout] key.



2. Press [Yes].

## Changing the Supervisor

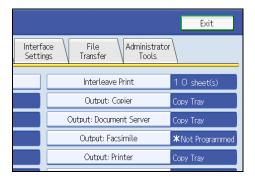
This section describes how to change the supervisor's login name and password.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

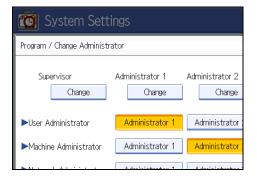
2. Press [System Settings].



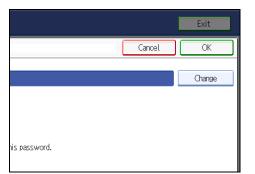
3. Press [Administrator Tools].



- 4. Press [Program / Change Administrator].
- 5. Under "Supervisor", press [Change].



6. Press [Change] for the login user name.



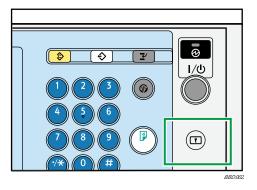
- 7. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
- 8. Press [Change] for the login password.
- 9. Enter the login password, and then press [OK].
- 10. If a password reentry screen appears, enter the login password, and then press [OK].
- 11. Press [OK] twice.
- 12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## **Resetting an Administrator's Password**

This section describes how to reset the administrators' passwords.

For details about logging on and logging off as the supervisor, see "Supervisor Operations".

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press the [Login/Logout] key.



3. Log on as the supervisor.

You can log on in the same way as an administrator.

- 4. Press [System Settings].
- 5. Press [Administrator Tools].

- 6. Press [Program / Change Administrator].
- 7. Press [Change] for the administrator you wish to reset.

System Settings			
Program / Change Administrator			
Supervisor Change	Administrator 1 Change	Administrator 2 Change	
►User Administrator	Administrator 1	Administrator :	
►Machine Administrator	Administrator 1	Administrator :	
<b>N N</b> 1 <b>N</b> 1 <b>N</b> 1 <b>N</b> 1	Adaptatatatan 1	A destated and an	

- 8. Press [Change] for the login password.
- 9. Enter the login password, and then press [OK].
- 10. If a password reentry screen appears, enter the login password, and then press [OK].
- 11. Press [OK] twice.
- 12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

• p.271 "Supervisor Operations"

## **Machine Administrator Settings**

The machine administrator settings that can be specified are as follows:

## System Settings

The following settings can be specified.

#### **General Features**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Tray Paper Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Timer Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Interface Settings**

The following settings can be specified.

- Network
  - DNS Configuration

You can perform a connection test.

Parallel Interface

Parallel Timing

Parallel Communication Speed

Selection Signal Status

Input Prime

**Bidirectional Communication** 

Signal Control

#### **File Transfer**

The following settings can be specified.

- Delivery Option
- Fax RX File Transmission
- SMTP Server

Connection Test

SMTP Authentication
 SMTP Authentication

User Name

E-mail Address

Password

Encryption

• POP before SMTP

Wait Time after Authent.

User Name

E-mail Address

Password

- Reception Protocol
- POP3 / IMAP4 Settings

Server Name

Encryption

Connection Test

- Administrator's E-mail Address
- Default User Name / Password (Send)
   SMB User Name / SMB Password
   FTP User Name / FTP Password
   NCP User Name / NCP Password
- Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message
- Fax E-mail Account

#### Administrator Tools

- Display / Print Counter Print Counter List
- Display / Clear / Print Counter per User
   Display Counter per User
   Print Counter per User
- User Authentication Management
   You can specify which authentication to use.
   You can also edit the settings for each function.
- Enhanced Authentication Management
- Administrator Authentication Management Machine Management
- Program / Change Administrator

Machine Administrator

You can change the user name and the full-control user's authority.

- Key Counter Management
- Extended Security

Restrict Display of User Information

Transfer to Fax Receiver

Authenticate Current Job

@Remote Service

Update Firmware

Change Firmware Structure

• Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server

Name

Server Name

Search Base

Port Number

Use Secure Connection (SSL)

Authentication

User Name

Password

Connection Test

Search Conditions

Search Options

- LDAP Search
- Program / Change / Delete Realm
- AOF (Always On)
- Service Mode Lock
- Auto Erase Memory Setting \*1
- Erase All Memory \*1
- Delete All Logs
- Transfer Log Setting
- Data Security for Copying \*2

• Fixed USB Port

• Machine Data Encryption Settings \*3

8

- \*1 The DataOverwriteSecurity Unit option must be installed.
- \*2 The Copy Data Security Unit option must be installed.
- \*3 The HDD Encryption Unit option must be installed.

## Maintenance

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Auto Colour Calibration**

All the settings can be specified.

## Copier / Document Server Features

The following settings can be specified.

#### **General Features**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Reproduction Ratio**

All the settings can be specified.

#### Edit

All the settings can be specified.

#### Stamp

All the settings can be specified.

#### Input / Output

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Adjust Colour Image**

All the settings can be specified.

#### Administrator Tools

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Facsimile Features**

The following settings can be specified.

#### **General Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Scan Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

#### Send Settings

The following settings can be specified.

- Program / Change / Delete Standard Message
- Backup File TX Setting

#### **Reception Settings**

The following settings can be specified.

- Switch Reception Mode
- Program Special Sender
- Program Special Sender: Print List
- Forwarding
- Reception File Setting
- SMTP RX File Delivery Settings
- 2 Sided Print
- Checkered Mark
- Centre Mark
- Print Reception Time
- Reception File Print Quantity
- Paper Tray
- Specify Tray for Lines
- Folder Transfer Result Report
- Memory Lock Reception

#### **Initial Settings**

The following settings can be specified.

- Parameter Setting
- Parameter Setting: Print List
- Program Closed Network Code
- Program Memory Lock ID
- Internet Fax Setting
- Select Dial/Push Phone
- Program Fax Information
- Menu Protect

- Email Setting
- Folder Setting

## **Printer Features**

The following settings can be specified.

#### List / Test Print

All the settings can be specified.

#### Maintenance

- Menu Protect
- List / Test Print Lock
- 4Colour Graphic Mode

#### System

- Print Error Report
- Auto Continue
- Memory Overflow
- Job Separation
- Rotate by 180 Degrees
- Initial Print Job List
- Memory Usage
- Duplex
- Copies
- Blank Page Print
- Spool Image
- Reserved Job Waiting Time
- Printer Language
- Sub Paper Size
- Page Size
- Letterhead Setting
- Bypass Tray Setting Priority
- Edge to Edge Print
- Default Printer Language
- Tray Switching

#### **Host Interface**

All the settings can be specified.

#### PCL Menu

All the settings can be specified.

#### PS Menu \*1

All the settings can be specified.

#### PDF Menu \*1

All the settings can be specified.

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

#### **Scanner Features**

The following settings can be specified.

#### **General Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Scan Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

#### Send Settings

- Compression (Black & White)
- Compression (Gray Scale/Full Colour)
- High Compression PDF Level
- Insert Additional E-mail Info
- No. of Digits for Single Page Files
- Stored File E-mail Method

#### **Initial Settings**

All the settings can be specified.

## Settings via Web Image Monitor

The following settings can be specified.

#### Top Page

- Reset Device
- Reset Printer Job

#### **Device Settings**

• System

Spool Printing

Protect Printer Display Panel

Print Priority

Function Reset Timer

Permit Firmware Update

Permit Firmware Structure Change

Display IP Address on Device Display Panel

Output Tray

Paper Tray Priority

Front Cover Sheet Tray

Back Cover Sheet Tray

Slip Sheet Tray

Designation Sheet 1 Tray

**Designation Sheet 2 Tray** 

Separation Sheet Tray

Paper

All the settings can be specified.

- Date/Time All the settings can be specified.
- Timer All the settings can be specified.
- Logs All the settings can be specified.
- E-mail

All the settings can be specified.

- Auto E-mail Notification
   All the settings can be specified.
- On-demand E-mail Notification All the settings can be specified.
- File Transfer All the settings can be specified.

- User Authentication Management All the settings can be specified.
- Administrator Authentication Management Machine Administrator Authentication Available Settings for Machine Administrator
- Program/Change Administrator

You can specify the following administrator settings as the machine administrator.

- Login User Name
- Login Password

**Encryption Password** 

LDAP Server

All the settings can be specified.

Firmware Update

All the settings can be specified.

Program/Change Realm
 All the settings can be specified.

#### Printer

System

All the settings can be specified.

Host Interface

All the settings can be specified.

- PCL Menu
   All the settings can be specified.
- PS Menu \* 1 All the settings can be specified.
- PDF Menu \* 1 All the settings can be specified.
- Tray Parameters (PCL)
   All the settings can be specified.
- Tray Parameters (PS) \* 1 All the settings can be specified.
- Virtual Printer Settings All the settings can be specified.

8

- PDF Group Password \* 1 All the settings can be specified.
- PDF Fixed Password \* 1

All the settings can be specified.

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

#### Fax

- Initial Settings
   All the settings can be specified.
- Send / Reception Settings
   All the settings can be specified.
- Parameter Settings

All the settings can be specified.

#### Scanner

- General Settings
   All the settings can be specified.
- Scan Settings

All the settings can be specified.

• Send Settings

All the settings can be specified.

• Initial Settings

All the settings can be specified.

- Default Settings for Normal Screens on Device
- Default Settings for Simplified Screens on Device

#### **Interface Settings**

• USB

#### Network

• SNMPv3

#### Security

• User Lockout Policy

All the settings can be specified.

#### **RC Gate**

• Setup RC Gate

Request No.

Update RC Gate Firmware

• Remote Communication Gate Proxy

#### Webpage

• Download Help File

# Settings via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Device Information**

- Reset Device
- Reset Current Job
- Reset All Jobs

#### User Management Tool

The following settings can be specified.

- User Page Count
- Access Control List
- Reset User Counters

8

# **Network Administrator Settings**

The network administrator settings that can be specified are as follows:

## System Settings

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Interface Settings**

If DHCP is set to On, the settings that are automatically obtained via DHCP cannot be specified.

Network

All the settings can be specified.

• Wireless LAN

All the settings can be specified.

#### **File Transfer**

SMTP Server

Server Name

Port No.

- E-mail Communication Port
- E-mail Reception Interval
- Max. Reception E-mail Size
- E-mail Storage in Server
- Auto Specify Sender Name
- Scanner Resend Interval Time
- Number of Scanner Resends

#### Administrator Tools

Administrator Authentication Management

Network Management

- Program / Change Administrator
  - Network Administrator

You can specify the user name and change the full-control user's authority.

• Extended Security

**Driver Encryption Key** 

- Network Security Level
- Settings by SNMP v1 and v2  $\,$

Restrict Use of Simple Encryption

# **Facsimile Features**

The following settings can be specified.

#### Send Settings

• Max. E-mail Size

#### **Initial Settings**

- Enable H.323
- Enable SIP
- H.323 Settings
- SIP Settings
- Program/Change/Delete Gateway

# **Scanner Features**

The following settings can be specified.

## Send Settings

- Max. E-mail Size
- Divide & Send E-mail

# Settings via Web Image Monitor

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Device Settings**

• System

Device Name

Comment

Location

• E-mail

Reception

SMTP

- E-mail Communication Port
- Auto E-mail Notification

Select groups to notify

- Administrator Authentication Management
   Network Administrator Authentication
   Available Settings for Network Administrator
- Program/Change Administrator
   You can specify the following administrator settings for the machine administrator.
   Login User Name
   Login Password
   Change Encryption Password

#### Fax

 Send/Reception Settings Maximum E-mail Size

Divide & Send E-mail

- IP-Fax Settings All the settings can be specified.
- IP-Fax Gateway Settings All the settings can be specified.

#### Scanner

• Send Settings

Max E-mail Size

Divide and Send E-mail

#### Interface

Wireless LAN Settings

Communication Mode

SSID

Channel

Security Method

WEP Settings

WPA Settings

Bluetooth \* 1

Operation Mode

\*1 The Bluetooth interface unit option must be installed.

#### Network

- IPv4 All the settings can be specified.
- IPv6

All the settings can be specified.

- NetWare All the settings can be specified.
- AppleTalk
   All the settings can be specified.
- SMB All the settings can be specified.
- SNMP

All the settings can be specified.

SNMPv3

All the settings can be specified.

- SSDP All the settings can be specified.
- Bonjour

All the settings can be specified.

#### Security

- Network Security All the settings can be specified.
- Access Control All the settings can be specified.
- IPP Authentication All the settings can be specified.
- SSL/TLS

All the settings can be specified.

- ssh
   All the settings can be specified.
- Site Certificates All the settings can be specified.
- Device Certificates

All the settings can be specified.

- IPsec All the settings can be specified.
- S/MIME

All the settings can be specified.

#### Webpage

• Download Help file

# Settings via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

The following settings can be specified.

#### **NIB Setup Tool**

All the settings can be specified.

# File Administrator Settings

The file administrator settings that can be specified are as follows:

# System Settings

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Interface Setting**

• DNS Configuration

Connection Test

#### Administrator Tools

- Administrator Authentication Management
   File Management
- Program / Change Administrator
   File Administrator
- Extended Security Enhance File Protection
- Auto Delete File in Document Server
- Delete All Files in Document Server

# **Facsimile Features**

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Reception Settings**

• Stored Reception File User Setting

# **Printer Features**

The following settings can be specified.

#### Maintenance

- Delete All Temporary Print Jobs
- Delete All Stored Print Jobs

#### System

• Auto Delete Temporary Print Jobs

• Auto Delete Stored Print Jobs

# Settings via Web Image Monitor

The following settings can be specified.

#### **Printer: Print Jobs**

The file administrator can Edit/Delete the Print Job List and Unlock the print job.

#### **Document Server**

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Device Settings**

- Auto E-mail Notification
  - Select groups to notify
- Administrator Authentication Management
  - File Administrator Authentication
  - Available Settings for File Administrator
- Program/Change Administrator

You can specify the following administrator settings for the file administrator.

- Login User Name
- Login Password
- Change Encryption Password

#### Printer

• Basic Settings

Auto Delete Temporary Print Jobs

Auto Delete Stored Print Jobs

#### Webpage

• Download Help File

# **User Administrator Settings**

The user administrator settings that can be specified are as follows:

# System Settings

The following settings can be specified.

#### Administrator Tools

- Address Book Management
- Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group
- Address Book: Change Order
- Print Address Book: Destination List
- Address Book: Edit Title
- Address Book: Switch Title
- Back Up / Restore Address Book
- Display / Clear / Print Counter per User
  - Clear All Users
  - Clear per User
- Administrator Authentication Management
  - User Management
- Program / Change Administrator
   User Administrator
- Extended Security
   Encrypt Address Book
   Restrict Use of Destinations
   Restrict Adding of User Destinations
   Password Policy

# Settings via Web Image Monitor

The following settings can be specified.

#### Address Book

All the settings can be specified.

#### **Device Settings**

- Auto E-mail Notification
   Select groups to notify
- Administrator Authentication Management
  - User Administrator Authentication
  - Available Settings for User Administrator
- Program/Change Administrator
  - The user administrator settings that can be specified are as follows:
  - Login User Name
  - Login Password
  - Change Encryption Password

#### Webpage

Download Help File

# Settings via SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

The following settings can be specified.

#### Address Management Tool

All the settings can be specified.

#### User Management Tool

- Restrict Access To Device
- Add New User
- Delete User
- User Properties

# **Document Server File Permissions**

The authorities for using the files stored in Document Server are as follows.

The authority designations in the list indicate users with the following authorities.

• Read-only

This is a user assigned "Read-only" authority.

• Edit

This is a user assigned "Edit" authority.

• Edit / Delete

This is a user assigned "Edit / Delete" authority.

• Full Control

This is a user granted full control.

• Owner

This is a user who can store files in the machine and authorize other users to view, edit, or delete those files.

• File Administrator

This is the file administrator.

- A = Granted authority to operate.
- = Not granted authority to operate.

Settings	Read-only	Edit	Edit / Delete	Full Control	Owner	File Admin.
Viewing Details About Stored Files	А	A	А	A	A *1	A
Viewing Thumbnails	А	А	А	А	A *1	А
Print/Transmission	А	А	А	А	A *1	-
Changing Information About Stored Files	-	A	А	A	A *1	-
Deleting Files	-	-	А	А	A *1	А
Specifying File Password	-	-	-	-	A	А
Specifying Permissions for Users/Groups	-	-	-	A	A	A

Settings	Read-only	Edit	Edit / Delete	Full Control	Owner	File Admin.	
Unlocking Files	-	-	-	-	-	А	

\*1 This setting can be specified by the owner.

# The Privilege for User Account Settings in the Address Book

The authorities for using the Address Book are as follows:

The authority designations in the list indicate users with the following authorities.

• Abbreviations in the table heads

Read-only (User) = This is a user assigned "Read-only" authority.

Edit (User) = This is a user assigned "Edit" authority.

Edit / Delete (User) = This is a user assigned "Edit / Delete" authority.

User Admin. = This is the user administrator.

Registered User = This is a user that has personal information registered in the Address Book and has a login password and user name.

Full Control = This is a user granted full control.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

A = You can view and change the setting.

B = You can view the setting.

C = You cannot view or specify the setting.

Settings	Read- only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Registere d User	User Admin.
Registration No.	В	А	А	А	А	А
Key Display	В	А	А	А	А	А
Name	В	А	А	А	А	А
Select Title	В	А	А	А	А	А

#### Tab Name: Auth. Info

Settings	Read-only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Register ed User	User Admin.
User Code	С	С	С	С	С	А
Login User Name	С	С	С	С	А	А
Login Password	С	С	С	С	A *1	A *1

Settings	Read-only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Register ed User	User Admin.
SMTP Authentication	С	С	С	С	A *1	A * 1
Folder Authentication	В	А	А	С	А	А
LDAP Authentication	С	С	С	С	A *1	A *1
Available Functions	С	С	С	С	В	А

\* 1 You can only enter the password.

#### Tab Name: Protection

Settings	Read- only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Registere d User	User Admin.
Use Name as	В	В	В	В	А	А
Protection Code	С	С	С	С	A *1	A * 1
Protection Object	В	В	В	В	А	А
Protect Dest.: Permissions for Users/Groups	С	С	С	A	A	A
Protect File(s): Permissions for Users/Groups	С	С	С	A	A	А

\* 1 You can only enter the password.

## Tab Name: Fax Dest.

Settings	Read- only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Register ed User	User Admin.
Transmission Format	В	А	А	В	А	А
Facsimile Number	В	А	А	A	А	А
International TX Mode	В	А	А	A	А	A

Settings	Read- only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Register ed User	User Admin.
Fax Header	В	А	А	А	А	А
Label Insertion	В	А	А	А	А	А

# Tab Name: E-mail Address

Settings	Read- only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Register ed User	User Admin.
E-mail Address	В	А	А	А	А	A

# Tab Name: Folder Destination

Settings	Read- only (User)	Edit (User)	Edit / Delete (User)	Full Control	Register ed User	User Admin.
SMB/FTP/NCP	В	А	А	A	А	A
SMB: Path	В	А	А	A	А	А
FTP: Port No.	В	А	А	A	А	А
FTP: Server Name	В	А	А	A	А	A
FTP: Path	В	А	А	A	А	A
NCP: Path	В	А	А	A	А	A
NCP: Connection Type	В	А	А	A	А	А

# **User Settings - Control Panel Settings**

This section displays the user settings that can be specified on the machine when user authentication is specified. Settings that can be specified by the user vary according to the menu protect level and available settings specifications.

# **Copier / Document Server Features**

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

#### Note

• Settings that are not in the list can only be viewed, regardless of the menu protect level setting. The default for [Menu Protect] is [Level 2].

#### **General Features**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Auto Image Density Priority	R/W	R	R
Original Photo Type Priority	R/W	R	R
Original Type Priority	R/W	R	R
Original Type Display	R/W	R	R
Paper Display	R/W	R	R
Original Orientation in Duplex Mode	R/W	R	R
Copy Orientation in Duplex mode	R/W	R	R
Max. Copy Quantity	R/W	R	R
Auto Tray Switching	R/W	R	R
Alert Sound: Original Left on Exposure Glass	R/W	R	R
Job End Call	R/W	R	R
Switch Original Counter Display	R/W	R	R
Customize Function: Copier	R/W	R/W	R
Customize Function: Document Server Storage	R/W	R/W	R

#### 8. Appendix

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Customize Function: Document Server Print	R/W	R/W	R

## **Reproduction Ratio**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Shortcut Reduce/Enlarge	R/W	R	R
Reproduction Ratio	R/W	R	R
Reduce/Enlarge Ratio Priority	R/W	R	R
Ratio for Create Margin	R/W	R	R

#### Edit

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Front Margin: Left / Right	R/W	R	R
Back Margin: Left / Right	R/W	R	R
Front Margin: Top / Bottom	R/W	R	R
Back Margin: Top / Bottom	R/W	R	R
1 Sided → 2 Sided Auto Margin: T to T	R/W	R	R
1 Sided → 2 Sided Auto Margin: T to B	R/W	R	R
Creep Setting for Magazine	R/W	R	R
Erase Border Width	R/W	R	R
Erase Original Shadow in Combine	R/W	R/W	R
Erase Centre Width	R/W	R/W	R
Front Cover Copy in Combine	R/W	R/W	R
Copy Order in Combine	R/W	R/W	R
Orientation: Booklet Magazine	R/W	R/W	R
Copy on Designating Page in Combine	R/W	R/W	R
Image Repeat Separation Line	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Double Copies Separation Line	R/W	R/W	R
Separation Line in Combine	R/W	R/W	R
Copy Back Cover	R/W	R/W	R

# Stamp

Background Numbering

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Size	R/W	R/W	R
Density	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour	R/W	R	R

## Preset Stamp

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Stamp Language	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Priority	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour: COPY	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: URGENT	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: PRIORITY	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: For Your Info.	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: PRELIMINARY	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: For Internal Use Only	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: CONFIDENTIAL	R/W	R	R
Stamp Colour: DRAFT	R/W	R	R
Stamp Format: COPY* 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: URGENT* 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: PRIORITY* 1	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Stamp Format: For Your Info.* 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: PRELIMINARY* 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: For Internal Use Only* 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: CONFIDENTIAL* 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: DRAFT* 1	R/W	R/W	R

\*1 The print position can be adjusted but not specified.

## User Stamp

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Program / Delete Stamp	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: 2	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: 3	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Format: 4	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour: 1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour: 2	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour: 3	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour: 4	R/W	R/W	R

Date Stamp

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Format	R/W	R	R
Font	R/W	R/W	R
Size	R/W	R/W	R
Superimpose	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour	R/W	R	R

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Stamp Setting *1	R/W	R/W	R

\*1 The print position can be adjusted but not specified.

## Page Numbering

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Stamp Format	R/W	R	R
Font	R/W	R/W	R
Size	R/W	R/W	R
Duplex Back Page Stamping Position	R/W	R/W	R
Page Numbering in Combine	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp on Designating Slip Sheet	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Position: P1, P2*1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Position: 1/5, 2/5*1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Position: -1-, -2*1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Position: P.1, P.2*1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Position: 1, 2*1	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Position: 1-1, 1-2*1	R/W	R/W	R
Superimpose	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour	R/W	R	R
Page Numbering Initial Letter	R/W	R/W	R

\*1 The print position can be adjusted but not specified.

# Stamp Text

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Font	R/W	R/W	R
Size	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Superimpose	R/W	R/W	R
Stamp Colour	R/W	R	R
Stamp Setting	R/W	R	R

# Input / Output

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Switch to Batch	R/W	R/W	R
SADF Auto Reset	R/W	R	R
Rotate Sort: Auto Paper Continue	R/W	R	R
Copy Eject Face Method in Glass Mode	R/W	R	R
Copy Eject Face Method in Bypass Mode	R/W	R	R
Memory Full Auto Scan Restart	R/W	R	R
Insert Separation Sheet	R/W	R	R
Letterhead Setting	R/W	R/W	R
Staple Position	R/W	R/W	R
Punch Type	R/W	R/W	R
Simplified Screen: Finishing Types	R/W	R/W	R

# Adjust Colour Image

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Background Density of ADS (Full Colour / Two- colour)	R/W	R/W	R
Colour Sensitivity	R/W	R/W	R
A.C.S Sensitivity	R/W	R/W	R
A.C.S Priority	R/W	R/W	R
Inkjet Output Type	R/W	R/W	R

# **Printer Functions**

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

#### Note

• Settings that are not in the list can only be viewed, regardless of the menu protect level setting.

The default for [Menu Protect] is [Level 2].

#### **Normal Printer Screen**

Functions	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Print Jobs	R/W	R/W	R/W
Displaying a list of Spool Jobs	R/W	R/W	R/W

# **Printer Features**

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

```
Note
```

• Settings that are not in the list can only be viewed, regardless of the menu protect level setting. The default for [Menu Protect] is [Level 2].

#### List / Test Print

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Multiple Lists	R/W	R/W	R/W
Configuration Page	R/W	R/W	R/W
Error Log	R/W	R/W	R/W
Menu List	R/W	R/W	R/W
PCL Configuration / Font Page	R/W	R/W	R/W
PS Configuration / Font Page	R/W	R/W	R/W
PDF Configuration / Font Page	R/W	R/W	R/W
Hex Dump	R/W	R/W	R/W

#### Maintenance

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
List/Test Print Lock	R	R	R
4 Colour Graphic Mode	R/W	R	R
Reset IPDS Fonts	R/W	R/W	R/W

## System

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Print Error Report	R/W	R	R
Auto Continue	R/W	R	R
Memory Overflow	R/W	R	R
Job Separation	R/W	R	R
Rotate by 180 Degrees	R/W	R	R
Auto Delete Temporary Print Jobs	R/W	R	R
Auto Delete Stored Print Jobs	R/W	R	R
Initial Print Job List	R/W	R	R
Memory Usage	R/W	R	R
Duplex	R/W	R	R
Copies	R/W	R	R
Blank Page Print	R/W	R	R
Spool Image	R/W	R	R
Reserved Job Waiting Time	R/W	R	R
Printer Language	R/W	R	R
Sub Paper Size	R/W	R	R
Page Size	R/W	R/W	R
Letterhead Setting	R/W	R	R
Bypass Tray Setting Priority	R/W	R	R
Edge to Edge Print	R/W	R	R
Default Printer Language	R/W	R	R
Tray Switching	R/W	R	R

# Host Interface

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
I/O Buffer	R/W	R	R
I/O Timeout	R/W	R	R

## PCL Menu

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Orientation	R/W	R	R
Form Lines	R/W	R	R
Font Source	R/W	R	R
Font Number	R/W	R	R
Point Size	R/W	R	R
Font Pitch	R/W	R	R
Symbol Set	R/W	R	R
Courier Font	R/W	R	R
Extend A4 Width	R/W	R	R
Append CR to LF	R/W	R	R
Resolution	R/W	R	R

# PS Menu \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Data Format	R/W	R	R
Resolution	R/W	R	R
Colour Setting	R/W	R	R
Colour Profile	R/W	R	R

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

# PDF Menu \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Change PDF Password	R/W	R	R
PDF Group Password	R/W	R	R
Resolution	R/W	R	R
Colour Setting	R/W	R	R
Colour Profile	R/W	R	R

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

8

# **Scanner Features**

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

```
Note
```

• Settings that are not in the list can only be viewed, regardless of the menu protect level setting. The default for [Menu Protect] is [Level 2].

#### **General Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Switch Title	R/W	R	R
Update Delivery Server Destination List	R/W	R/W	N/A
Search Destination	R/W	R	R
TWAIN Standby Time	R/W	R	R
Destination List Display Priority 1	R/W	R	R
Destination List Display Priority 2	R/W	R	R
Print & Delete Scanner Journal	R/W	R	R
Print Scanner Journal	R/W	N/A	N/A
Delete Scanner Journal	R/W	N/A	N/A

#### **Scan Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
A.C.S Sensitivity Level	R/W	R	R
Wait Time for Next Orig.: Exposure Glass	R/W	R	R
Wait Time for Next Original(s).: SADF	R/W	R	R

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Background Density ADS (Full Colour)	R/W	R	R

# Send Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Compression (Black & White)	R/W	R/W	R
Compression (Gray Scale / Full Colour)	R/W	R/W	R
High Compression PDF Level	R/W	R/W	R
Max. E-mail Size	R	R	R
Divide & Send E-mail	R	R	R
Insert Additional E-mail Info	R/W	R/W	R
No. of Digits for Single Page Files	R/W	R/W	R
Stored File E-mail Method	R/W	R/W	R

# **Facsimile Features**

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

```
Note
```

• Settings that are not in the list can only be viewed, regardless of the menu protect level setting. The default for [Menu Protect] is [Off].

#### **General Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Quick Operation key 1-3	R/W	R/W	R
Switch Title	R/W	R/W	R
Search Destination	R/W	R/W	R
Communication Page Count	R	R	R
Adjust Sound Volume	R/W	R/W	R
Box Setting	R/W	R	N/A
Box Setting: Print List	R/W	R/W	N/A
On Hook Mode Release Time	R/W	R/W	R

#### **Scan Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Program/Change/Delete Scan Size	R/W	R/W	R

# Send Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Max E-mail Size	R/W	R	R
Program/Change/Delete Standard Message	R/W	R	R
Backup File TX Setting	R/W	R	R

# **Reception Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Switch Reception Mode	R/W	R	R
Program Special Sender	R/W	N/A	N/A
Program Special Sender: Print List	R/W	N/A	N/A
Forwarding	R/W	R	R
Reception File Setting	R/W	R	R
Stored Reception File User Setting	R/W	R	R
SMTP RX File Delivery Setting	R/W	R	R
2 Sided Print	R/W	R/W	R
Checkered Mark	R/W	R/W	R
Centre Mark	R/W	R/W	R
Print Reception Time	R/W	R/W	R
Reception File Print Quantity	R/W	R/W	R
Paper Tray	R/W	R/W	R
Specify Tray for Lines	R/W	R/W	R
Folder Transfer Result Report	R/W	R	R
Memory Lock Reception	R/W	R	R

## **Initial Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Parameter Setting	R/W	R	R
Parameter Setting: Print List	R/W	R/W	N/A
Program Closed Network Code	R/W	R	N/A
Program Memory Lock ID	R/W	R	N/A
Internet Fax Settings	R/W	R	R
Select Dial/Push Phone	R/W	R	R
Program Fax Information	R/W	R	R
Enable H.323 Settings	R/W	R	R
Enable SIP	R/W	R	R
H.323 Settings	R/W	R	R
SIP Settings	R/W	R	R
Program/Change/Delete Gateway	R/W	R	R
E-mail Setting	R/W	R	R
Folder Setting	R/W	R	R

# System Settings

The settings available to the user depend on whether or not administrator authentication has been specified.

If administrator authentication has been specified, the settings available to the user depend on whether or not Available Settings has been specified.

- Abbreviations in the table heads
  - A = Authorized user when Available Settings have not been specified.
  - B = Authorized user when Available Settings have been specified.
  - C = Unauthorized user.
- Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) =Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

#### **General Features**

Settings	А	В	С
Program / Change / Delete User Text	R/W	R	N/A
Panel Key Sound	R/W	R	N/A
Warm-up Beeper	R/W	R	N/A
Copy Count Display	R/W	R	N/A
Function Priority	R/W	R	N/A
Print Priority	R/W	R	N/A
Function Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Interleave Print	R/W	R	N/A
Output: Copier	R/W	R	N/A
Output: Document Server	R/W	R	N/A
Output: Facsimile	R/W	R	N/A
Output: Printer	R/W	R	N/A
ADF Original Elevation	R/W	R	N/A
System Status / Job List Display Time	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Time Interval Between Printing Jobs	R/W	R	N/A
Key Repeat	R/W	R	N/A

# Tray Paper Settings

Settings	А	В	С
Paper Tray Priority: Copier	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Tray Priority: Facsimile	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Tray Priority: Printer	R/W	R	N/A
Printer Bypass Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray Paper Size: Tray 1-3	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Type: Bypass Tray	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Type: Tray 1-3	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Type: LCT	R/W	R	N/A
Front Cover Sheet Tray	R/W	R	N/A
Back Cover Sheet Tray	R/W	R	N/A
Slip Sheet Tray	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 1 Tray	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 2 Tray	R/W	R	N/A
Separation Sheet Tray	R/W	R	N/A

## **Timer Settings**

Settings	А	В	С
Auto Off Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Energy Saver Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Panel Off Timer	R/W	R	N/A
System Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
Copier / Document Server Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Facsimile Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Printer Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Scanner Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Set Date	R/W	R	N/A
Set Time	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Logout Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Monday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Tuesday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Wednesday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Thursday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Friday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Saturday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code: Sunday	R/W	R	N/A

# Interface Settings

Interface Settings

Settings	A	В	С
Print List	R/W	N/A	N/A

Network

Settings	А	В	С
Machine IPv4 Address * 1	R/W	R	N/A
IPv4 Gateway Address	R/W	R	N/A
Machine IPv6 Address * 1	R	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
IPv6 Gateway Address	R	R	N/A
IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	R/W	R	N/A
DNS Configuration * 1	R/W	R	N/A
DDNS Configuration	R/W	R	N/A
IPsec	R/W	R	N/A
Domain Name *1	R/W	R	N/A
WINS Configuration * 1	R/W	R	N/A
Effective Protocol	R/W	R	N/A
NCP Delivery Protocol	R/W	R	N/A
NW Frame Type	R/W	R	N/A
SMB Computer Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
SMB Work Group	R/W	N/A	N/A
Ethernet Speed	R/W	R	N/A
LAN Type	R/W	R	N/A
Ping Command	R/W	R	N/A
Permit SNMPv3 Communication	R/W	R	N/A
Permit SSL / TLS Communication	R/W	R	N/A
Host Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
Machine Name	R/W	N/A	N/A

\*1 If you select [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)], you can only read the setting.

Parallel Interface \*2

Settings	А	В	С
Parallel Timing	R/W	R	N/A
Parallel Communication Speed	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Selection Signal Status	R/W	R	N/A
Input Prime	R/W	R	N/A
Bidirectional Communication	R/W	R	N/A
Signal Control	R/W	R	N/A

\*2 The IEEE 1284 interface board option must be installed.

Wireless LAN \*3

Settings	А	В	С
Communication Mode	R/W	R	N/A
SSID Setting	R/W	R	N/A
Ad-hoc Channel	R/W	R	N/A
Security Method	R/W	R	N/A
Restore Factory Defaults	R/W	N/A	N/A

\*3 The Wireless LAN interface unit option must be installed.

### WEP (Encryption) Settings

Settings	А	В	С
WEP (Encryption) Key *4	R	R	N/A
Transmission Speed	R	R	N/A
Restore Defaults	R	R	N/A

\*4 Only the encryption setting can be read.

# File Transfer

Settings	А	В	С
Delivery Option *5	R/W	R/W	N/A
Fax RX File Transmission	R/W	R	N/A
SMTP Server	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
SMTP Authentication *6	R/W	R	N/A
POP before SMTP	R/W	R	N/A
Reception Protocol	R/W	R	N/A
POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	R/W	R	N/A
Administrator's E-mail Address	R/W	N/A	N/A
E-mail Communication Port	R/W	R	N/A
E-mail Reception Interval	R/W	R	N/A
Max. Reception E-mail Size	R/W	R	N/A
E-mail Storage in Server	R/W	R	N/A
Default User Name / Password (Send) *6	R/W	R	N/A
Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	R/W	R/W	N/A
Auto Specify Sender name	R/W	R	N/A
Fax E-mail Account	R/W	R	N/A
Scanner Resend Interval Time	R/W	R	N/A
Number of Scanner Resends	R/W	R	N/A

\*5 Only the Main Delivery Server IP Address and Sub Delivery Server IP Address can be viewed.

\*6 Only the password can be specified.

### Administrator Tools

Settings	А	В	С
Address Book Management	R/W	R/W	N/A
Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group	R/W	R/W	N/A
Address Book: Change Order	R/W	N/A	N/A
Print Address Book: Destination List	R/W	R/W	N/A
Address Book: Edit Title	R/W	N/A	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
Address Book: Switch Title	R/W	N/A	N/A
Back Up / Restore Address Book	R/W	N/A	N/A
Display / Print Counter	R/W	R/W	N/A
Display / Clear / Print Counter per User	R/W	N/A	N/A
User Authentication Management	R/W	R	N/A
Administrator Authentication Management	R/W	N/A	N/A
Program / Change Administrator	N/A	N/A	N/A
Key Counter Management	R/W	R	N/A
Extended Security	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Delete File in Document Server	R/W	R	N/A
Delete All Files in Document Server	R/W	N/A	N/A
Capture Priority *7	R	R	N/A
Capture: Delete All Unsent Files *7	R	R	N/A
Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server *6	R/W	R	N/A
LDAP Search	R/W	R	N/A
Program / Change / Delete Realm	R/W	R	N/A
AOF (Always On)	R/W	R	N/A
Service Mode Lock	R/W	R	N/A
Firmware Version	R/W	R	N/A
Network Security Level	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Erase Memory Setting *8	R/W	R	N/A
Erase All Memory *8	R/W	R	N/A
Transfer log Setting	R/W	N/A	N/A
Data Security for Copying *9	R/W	R	N/A
Fixed USB Port	R/W	R	N/A

#### 8. Appendix

Settings	А	В	С
Machine Data Encryption Settings *10	N/A	N/A	N/A

\*6 Only the password can be specified.

\*7 The File Format Converter option must be installed.

\*8 The DataOverwriteSecurity Unit option must be installed.

- \*9 The Copy Data Security Unit option must be installed.
- \*10 The HDD Encryption Unit option must be installed.

# User Settings - Web Image Monitor Settings

This section displays the user settings that can be specified on Web Image Monitor when user authentication is specified. Settings that can be specified by the user vary according to the menu protect level and available settings specifications.

# **Device Settings**

The settings available to the user depend on whether or not administrator authentication has been specified.

If administrator authentication has been specified, the settings available to the user depend on whether or not [Available Settings] has been specified.

- Abbreviations in the table heads
  - A = Authorized user when Available functions have not been specified.
  - B = Authorized user when Available functions have been specified.
  - C = Unauthorized user.
- Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

#### System

Settings	A	В	С
General Settings : Device Name	R/W	R/W	N/A
General Settings : Comment	R/W	R	N/A
General Settings : Location	R/W	R	N/A
General Settings : Spool Printing	R/W	R	N/A
Protect Printer Display Panel	R/W	R	N/A
Output Tray : Copier	R/W	R	N/A
Output Tray : Fax	R/W	R	N/A
Output Tray : Printer	R/W	R	N/A
Output Tray : Document Server	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Tray Priority : Copier	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Tray Priority : Fax	R/W	R	N/A
Paper Tray Priority : Printer	R/W	R	N/A
Front Cover Sheet Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Front Cover Sheet Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Front Cover Sheet Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A
Back Cover Sheet Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Back Cover Sheet Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Back Cover Sheet Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A
Cover Sheet Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Cover Sheet Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Cover Sheet Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A
Slip Sheet Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Slip Sheet Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Slip Sheet Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 1 Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 1 Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 1 Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 2 Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 2 Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Designation Sheet 2 Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A
Separation Sheet Tray : Tray to set	R/W	R	N/A
Separation Sheet Tray : Display Time	R/W	R	N/A

# Paper

Settings	А	В	С
Tray1 : Paper Type	R/W	R	N/A
Tray1 : Paper Thickness	R/W	R	N/A
Tray1 : Apply Auto Paper Select	R/W	R	N/A
Tray1 : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Tray2 : Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray2 : Custom Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray2 : Paper Type	R/W	R	N/A
Tray2 : Paper Thickness	R/W	R	N/A
Tray2 : Apply Auto Paper Select	R/W	R	N/A
Tray2 : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Tray3 : Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray3 : Custom Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray3 : Paper Type	R/W	R	N/A
Tray3 : Paper Thickness	R/W	R	N/A
Tray3 : Apply Auto Paper Select	R/W	R	N/A
Tray3 : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Tray4 : Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray4 : Custom Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Tray4 : Paper Type	R/W	R	N/A
Tray4 : Paper Thickness	R/W	R	N/A
Tray4 : Apply Auto Paper Select	R/W	R	N/A
Tray4 : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Large Capacity Tray : Paper Type	R/W	R	N/A
Large Capacity Tray : Paper Thickness	R/W	R	N/A
Large Capacity Tray : Apply Auto Paper Select	R/W	R	N/A
Large Capacity Tray : Apply Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Bypass Tray : Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Bypass Tray : Custom Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Bypass Tray : Paper Type	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Bypass Tray : Paper Thickness	R/W	R	N/A

### Date/Time

Settings	А	В	С
Set Date	R/W	R	N/A
Set Time	R/W	R	N/A
SNTP Server Address	R/W	R	N/A
SNTP Polling Interval	R/W	R	N/A
Time Zone	R/W	R	N/A

### Timer

Settings	A	В	С
Auto Off Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Energy Saver Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Panel Off Timer	R/W	R	N/A
System Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Copier/Document Server Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Facsimile Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Scanner Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Printer Auto Reset Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Logout Timer	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer Code	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer: Monday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer: Tuesday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer: Wednesday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer: Thursday	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Weekly Timer: Friday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer: Saturday	R/W	R	N/A
Weekly Timer: Sunday	R/W	R	N/A

Logs

Settings	А	В	С
Collect Job Log	R/W	R	N/A
Job Log Collect Level	R/W	R	N/A
Collect Access Logs	R/W	R	N/A
Access Log Collect Level	R/W	R	N/A
Transfer Logs	R	R	N/A
Encrypt Logs	R	R	N/A
Delete All Logs	R	R	N/A

E-mail

Settings	А	В	С
Administrator E-mail Address	R/W	R	N/A
Reception Protocol	R/W	R	N/A
E-mail Reception Interval	R/W	R	N/A
Max. Reception E-mail Size	R/W	R	N/A
E-mail Storage in Server	R/W	R	N/A
SMTP Server Name	R/W	R	N/A
SMTP Port No.	R/W	R	N/A
SMTP Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
SMTP Auth. E-mail Address	R/W	R	N/A
SMTP Auth. User Name	R/W	N/A	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
SMTP Auth. Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
SMTP Auth. Encryption	R/W	R	N/A
POP before SMTP	R/W	R	N/A
POP E-mail Address	R/W	R	N/A
POP User Name	R/W	R	N/A
POP Password	R/W	R	N/A
Timeout setting after POP Auth.	R/W	R	N/A
POP3/IMAP4 Server Name	R/W	R	N/A
POP3/IMAP4 Encryption	R/W	R	N/A
POP3 Reception Port No.	R/W	R	N/A
IMAP4 Reception Port No.	R/W	R	N/A
Fax E-mail Address	R/W	R	N/A
Receive Fax E-mail	R/W	N/A	N/A
Fax E-mail User Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
Fax E-mail Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
E-mail Notification E-mail Address	R/W	R	N/A
Receive E-mail Notification	R/W	N/A	N/A
E-mail Notification User Name	R/W	R	N/A
E-mail Notification Password	R/W	R	N/A

# Auto E-mail Notification

Settings	A	В	С
Notification Message	R	R	N/A
Groups to Notify : Address List	R	R	N/A
Call Service	R	R	N/A

Settings	A	В	С
Out of Toner	R	R	N/A
Toner Almost Empty	R	R	N/A
Paper Misfeed	R	R	N/A
Cover Open	R	R	N/A
Out of Paper	R	R	N/A
Almost Out of Paper	R	R	N/A
Paper Tray Error	R	R	N/A
Output Tray Full	R	R	N/A
Waste Toner Bottle is Full	R	R	N/A
Unit Connection Error	R	R	N/A
Duplex Unit Error	R	R	N/A
Replacement Required: PCU	R	R	N/A
Add Staples	R	R	N/A
Service Call Successful	R	R	N/A
Hole Punch Receptacle is Full	R	R	N/A
File Storage Memory Full Soon	R	R	N/A
Waste Staple Receptacle is Full	R	R	N/A
Log Error	R	R	N/A
Device Access Violation	R	R	N/A
Document Server Memory Full	R	R	N/A
Detailed Settings of Each Item	R	R	N/A

# **On-demand E-mail Notification**

Settings	А	В	С
Notification Subject	R	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
Notification Message	R	R	N/A
Restriction to System Config. Info.	R	R	N/A
Restriction to Network Config. Info.	R	R	N/A
Restriction to Printer Config. Info.	R	R	N/A
Restriction to Supply Info.	R	R	N/A
Restriction to Device Status Info.	R	R	N/A
Receivable E-mail Address/Domain Name E-mail Language	R	R	N/A

# File Transfer

Settings	А	В	С
SMB User Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
SMB Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
FTP User Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
FTP Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
NCP User Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
NCP Password	R/W	N/A	N/A

### **User Authentication Management**

Settings	А	В	С
User Authentication Management	R/W	R	N/A
User Code Authentication <sup>–</sup> Printer Job Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
User Code <sup>-</sup> Available Function	R/W	R	N/A
Basic Authentication <sup>-</sup> Printer Job Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
Basic Authentication <sup>-</sup> Available Function	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
Windows Authentication <sup>–</sup> Printer Job Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
Windows Authentication <sup>-</sup> SSL	R/W	R	N/A
Windows Authentication <sup>–</sup> Kerberos Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
Windows Authentication <sup>-</sup> Domain Name	R/W	R	N/A
Windows Authentication <sup>-</sup> Realm Name	R/W	R	N/A
Windows Authentication <sup>-</sup> Group Settings for Windows Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
LDAP Authentication <sup>-</sup> Printer Job Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
LDAP Authentication <sup>-</sup> LDAP Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
LDAP Authentication <sup>-</sup> Login Name Attribute	R/W	R	N/A
LDAP Authentication <sup>-</sup> Unique Attribute	R/W	R	N/A
LDAP Authentication <sup>-</sup> Available Function	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>–</sup> Printer Job Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>-</sup> SSL	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>–</sup> Integration Server Name	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>–</sup> Authentication Type	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>-</sup> Obtain URL	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>–</sup> Domain Name	R/W	R	N/A
Integration Server Authentication <sup>–</sup> Group Settings for Integration Server Authentication	R/W	R	N/A

# Administrator Authentication Management

Settings	А	В	С
User Administrator Authentication	R	R	N/A
Available Settings for User Administrator	R	R	N/A
Machine Administrator Authentication	R	R	N/A
Available Settings for Machine Administrator	R	R	N/A
Network Administrator Authentication	R	R	N/A
Available Settings for Network Administrator	R	R	N/A
File Administrator Authentication	R	R	N/A
Available Settings for File Administrator	R	R	N/A

### LDAP Server

Settings	А	В	С
LDAP Search	R/W	N/A	N/A
Program/Change/Delete	R/W	N/A	N/A

# Printer

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

The default for [Menu Protect] is [Level 2].

#### **Printer Basic Settings**

System

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Print Error Report	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Continue	R/W	R	N/A
Memory Overflow	R/W	R	N/A
Job Separation	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Delete Temporary Print Jobs	R/W	R	N/A
Auto Delete Stored Print Jobs	R/W	R	N/A
Initial Print Job List	R/W	R	N/A
Rotate by 180 Degrees	R/W	R	N/A
Memory Usage	R/W	R	N/A
Duplex	R/W	R	N/A
Copies	R/W	R	N/A
Blank Page Print	R/W	R	N/A
Spool Image	R/W	R	N/A
Reserved Job Waiting Time	R/W	R	N/A
Printer Language	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Sub Paper Size	R/W	R	N/A
Page Size	R/W	R	N/A
Letterhead Setting	R/W	R	N/A
Bypass Tray Setting Priority	R/W	R	N/A
Edge to Edge Print	R/W	R	N/A
Default Printer Language	R/W	R	N/A
Tray Switching	R/W	R	N/A
List/Test Print Lock	R	R	N/A
Virtual Printer	R/W	R	N/A

#### Host Interface

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
I/O Buffer	R	R	R
I/O Timeout	R	R	R

#### PCL Menu

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Orientation	R	R	R
Form Lines	R	R	R
Font Source	R	R	R
Font Number	R	R	R
Point Size	R	R	R
Font Pitch	R	R	R
Symbol Set	R	R	R
Courier Font	R	R	R
Extend A4 Width	R	R	R

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Append CR to LF	R	R	R
Resolution	R	R	R

### PS Menu \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Data Format	R	R	R
Resolution	R	R	R
Color Setting	R	R	R
Color Profile	R	R	R

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

### PDF Menu \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Resolution	R	R	R
Color Setting	R	R	R
Color Profile	R	R	R

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

### Virtual Printer Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Details	R/W	R	N/A
Select Virtual Printer	R/W	R/W	N/A

# PDF Temporary Password \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
PDF Temporary Password	R	R	R
Confirm Password	R	R	R

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

# PDF Group Password \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Current PDF Group Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
New PDF Group Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
Confirm PDF Group Password	R/W	N/A	N/A

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

# PDF Fixed Password \*1

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Current PDF Fixed Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
New PDF Fixed Password	R/W	N/A	N/A
Confirm Password	R/W	N/A	N/A

\*1 The PostScript 3 Unit option must be installed.

# Scanner

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

The default for [Menu Protect] is [Level 2].

#### **General Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Switch Title	R/W	N/A	N/A
Search Destination	R/W	N/A	N/A
TWAIN Standby Time	R/W	N/A	N/A
Destination List Display Priority 1	R/W	N/A	N/A
Destination List Display Priority 2	R/W	N/A	N/A
Print & Delete Scanner Journal	R/W	N/A	N/A

### Scan Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
A.C.S. Sensitivity Level	R	N/A	N/A
Wait Time for Next Original(s)	R	N/A	N/A
Background Display of ADS (Full Color)	R	N/A	N/A

### Send Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Compression (Black & White)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Compression (Gray Scale/Full Color)	R/W	N/A	N/A

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
High Compression PDF Level	R/W	N/A	N/A
Max. E-mail Size	R/W	N/A	N/A
Divide & Send E-mail	R/W	N/A	N/A
Insert Additional E-mail Info	R/W	N/A	N/A
No. of Digits for Single Page Files	R/W	N/A	N/A
Stored File E-mail Method	R/W	N/A	N/A

# Fax

If you have specified administrator authentication, the available functions and settings depend on the menu protect setting.

The following settings can be specified by someone who is not an administrator.

• Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

The default for [Menu Protect] is [Off].

### **Initial Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Closed Network Code	R/W	N/A	N/A
Internet Fax	R/W	N/A	N/A
Program Memory Lock ID	R/W	N/A	N/A
Fax Information: Fax Header	R/W	N/A	N/A
Fax Information: Own Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
Fax Information: Own Fax Number	R/W	N/A	N/A
Fax Information: G4 Terminal ID	R/W	N/A	N/A
Select Dial/Push Phone	R/W	N/A	N/A

### Send / Reception Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Maximum E-mail Size	R/W	N/A	N/A
Reception Mode Switch	R/W	N/A	N/A
SMTP RX File Delivery Settings	R/W	N/A	N/A
Duplex Print	R/W	R/W	N/A
Checkered Mark	R/W	R/W	N/A
Center Mark	R/W	R/W	N/A

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Print Reception Time	R/W	R/W	N/A
Reception File Print Quantity	R/W	R/W	N/A
Paper Tray	R/W	R/W	N/A
Memory Lock Reception	R/W	N/A	N/A

# **IP-Fax Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Enable H.323	R/W	N/A	N/A
Enable IP-Fax Gatekeeper	R/W	N/A	N/A
Gatekeeper Address (Main)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Gatekeeper Address (Sub)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Own Fax No.	R/W	N/A	N/A
Enable SIP	R/W	N/A	N/A
Enable Server	R/W	N/A	N/A
User Name	R/W	N/A	N/A
Server IP Address: Proxy Server Addr. (Main)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Server IP Address: Proxy Server Addr. (Sub)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Server IP Address: Redirect Svr. Addr. (Main)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Server IP Address: Redirect Svr. Addr. (Sub)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Server IP Address: Registrar Address (Main)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Server IP Address: Registrar Address (Sub)	R/W	N/A	N/A
Digest Authentication	R/W	N/A	N/A

# IP-Fax Gateway Settings

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Prefix 1-50	R/W	N/A	N/A

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Select Protocol 1-50	R/W	N/A	N/A
Gateway Address 1-50	R/W	N/A	N/A

### **Parameter Settings**

Settings	Off	Level 1	Level 2
Just Size Printing	R/W	N/A	N/A
Convert to PDF When Transferring to Folder	R/W	N/A	N/A
Journal	R/W	N/A	N/A
Immediate Transmission Result Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
Communication Result Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
Memory Storage Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
SEP Code RX Result Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
SEP Code RX Reserve Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
Confidential File Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
LAN-Fax Result Report	R/W	N/A	N/A
Inclusion of Part of Image	R/W	N/A	N/A
Error E-mail Notification	R/W	N/A	N/A
Display Network Errors	R/W	N/A	N/A
Journal Notification by E-mail	R/W	N/A	N/A
Response to RX Notice Request	R/W	N/A	N/A
Select Destination Type Priority	R/W	N/A	N/A

# Interface

The settings available to the user depend on whether or not administrator authentication has been specified.

If administrator authentication has been specified, the settings available to the user depend on whether or not "Available Settings" has been specified.

- Abbreviations in the table heads
  - A = Authorized user when Available functions have not been specified.
  - B = Authorized user when Available functions have been specified.
  - C = Unauthorized user.
- Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

### Interface Settings

Settings	А	В	С
Network : LAN Type	R	N/A	N/A
Ethernet : Network	R	R	N/A
Ethernet : MAC Address	R	R	N/A
Bluetooth * 1	R/W	R	N/A
Bluetooth: Operation Mode * 1	R/W	R	N/A
USB	R/W	R	N/A

\*1 The Bluetooth interface unit option must be installed.

### Wireless LAN Settings \*2

Settings	А	В	С
LAN Type	R/W	R	N/A
Network	R	R	N/A
MAC Address	R	R	N/A
Available Wireless LAN	R	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
Communication Mode	R/W	R	N/A
SSID	R/W	R	N/A
Channel	R/W	R	N/A
Security Method	R/W	R	N/A
WEP Authentication	R/W	R	N/A
WEP Key Number	R/W	R	N/A
WEP Key	R/W	R	N/A
WPA Encryption Method	R/W	R	N/A
WPA Authentication Method	R/W	R	N/A
WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK	R/W	R	N/A
WPA/WPA2 Settings	R/W	R	N/A

\*2 The Wireless LAN interface unit option must be installed.

# Network

The settings available to the user depend on whether or not administrator authentication has been specified.

If administrator authentication has been specified, the settings available to the user depend on whether or not "Available Settings" has been specified.

• Abbreviations in the table heads

A = Authorized user when Available functions have not been specified.

- B = Authorized user when Available functions have been specified.
- C = Unauthorized user.
- Abbreviations in the table columns

R/W (Read and Write) = Both reading and modifying the setting are available.

R (Read) = Reading only.

N/A (Not Applicable) = Neither reading nor modifying the setting is available.

IPv4
------

Settings	A	В	С
IPv4	R	R	N/A
Host Name	R/W	R	N/A
DHCP	R/W	R	N/A
Domain Name	R/W	R	N/A
IPv4 Address	R/W	R	N/A
Subnet Mask	R/W	R	N/A
DDNS	R/W	R	N/A
WINS	R/W	R	N/A
Primary WINS Server	R/W	R	N/A
Secondary WINS Server	R/W	R	N/A
Scope ID	R/W	R	N/A
Default Gateway Address	R/W	R	N/A
DNS Server	R/W	R	N/A
LPR	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
RSH/RCP	R/W	R	N/A
DIPRINT	R/W	R	N/A
FTP	R/W	R	N/A
sftp	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Device	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Printer	R/W	R	N/A
IPP	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Printer / IPP Timeout	R/W	R	N/A
RHPP	R/W	R	N/A

### IPv6

Settings	A	В	С
IPv6 Address	R/W	R	N/A
Host Name	R/W	R	N/A
Domain Name	R/W	R	N/A
Link-local Address	R/W	R	N/A
Stateless Address	R/W	R	N/A
Manual Configuration Address	R/W	R	N/A
DCHPv6-lite	R/W	R	N/A
DDNS	R/W	R	N/A
Default Gateway Address	R/W	R	N/A
DNS Server	R/W	R	N/A
LPR	R/W	R	N/A
RSH/RCP	R/W	R	N/A
DIPRINT	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
FTP	R/W	R	N/A
sftp	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Device	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Printer	R/W	R	N/A
IPP	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Printer / IPP Timeout	R/W	R	N/A
RHPP	R/W	R	N/A

### NetWare

Settings	А	В	С
NetWare	R/W	R	N/A
Print Server Name	R/W	R	N/A
Logon Mode	R/W	R	N/A
File Server Name	R/W	R	N/A
NDS Tree	R/W	N/A	N/A
NDS Context Name	R/W	R	N/A
Operation Mode	R/W	R	N/A
Remote Printer No.	R/W	N/A	N/A
Job Timeout	R/W	N/A	N/A
Frame Type	R/W	R	N/A
Print Server Protocol	R/W	R	N/A
NCP Delivery Protocol	R/W	R	N/A

# AppleTalk

Settings	А	В	С
AppleTalk	R/W	R	N/A

Settings	А	В	С
Network No.	R	R	N/A
Printer Name	R/W	R	N/A
Printer Type	R	R	N/A
Zone Name	R/W	R	N/A

#### SMB

Settings	А	В	С
SMB	R/W	R	N/A
Protocol	R	R	N/A
Workgroup Name	R/W	R	N/A
Computer Name	R/W	R	N/A
Comment	R/W	R	N/A
Share Name	R	R	N/A
Notify Print Completion	R/W	R	N/A

# Bonjour

Settings	A	В	С
Bonjour	R/W	R	N/A
Local Hostname	R	R	N/A
Computer Name	R/W	R	N/A
Location	R/W	R	N/A
DIPRINT	R/W	R	N/A
LPR	R/W	R	N/A
IPP	R/W	R	N/A

# Webpage

Settings	А	В	С
Language 1	R/W	R	N/A
Language 2	R/W	R	N/A
URL 1	R/W	R	N/A
URL 2	R/W	R	N/A
Set Help URL Target	R/W	R	N/A
WS-Device / UPnP Setting	R/W	R	N/A
Download Help Page	R/W	R/W	N/A

8

# **Functions That Require Options**

The following functions require certain options and additional functions.

- Hard Disk overwrite erase function DataOverwriteSecurity Unit
- Data security for copying function Copy Data Security Unit
- PDF direct print function Postscript 3 Unit
- Hard disk data encryption function HDD Encryption Unit

# INDEX

### Α

Access Control	
Access Permission	116
Address Book Access Permission	141
Address Book Privileges	299
Administrator	
Administrator Authentication	12, 22, 27
Administrator Privileges	27
AH Protocol	210
Authenticate Current Job	237
Authentication and Access Limits	11
Authentication Information	52
authfree	232
Auto Erase Memory Setting	158
Auto Logout	97
Available Functions	174

### В

Basic Authentication46	
C	

Change Firmware Structure	239
Copier / Document Server Features	303
Creating the Device Certificate (Certificate Issue	ued
by a Certificate Authority)	201

### D

Data Security for Copying1	02
Device Settings	28
Document Server File Permissions2	97
Driver Encryption Key194, 2	35

### E

Edit	297, 299
Edit / Delete	297, 299
Electronic Signature	135
Email Encryption	133
Enabling Authentication	25
Enabling SSL	203
Enabling/Disabling Protocols	182
Encrypt Address Book	235
Encrypting Data on the Hard Disk	147
Encrypting the Data in the Address Book	144

Encryption Key Auto Exchange / Manual Settings - Shared Settings211 Encryption Key Auto Exchange Security Level 211
Encryption Key Auto Exchange Setting Items
Encryption Key Auto Exchange Settings Configuration Flow218
Encryption Key Manual Settings Configuration Flow
Encryption Key Manual Settings Items216
Encryption Technology11
Enhance File Protection236
Erase All Memory162
Error Code251
Error Message249
ESP Protocol209
Extended Security Functions233

# F

Facsimile Features	316
Fax	344
File Administrator	20, 297
File Administrator Settings	293
File Creator (Owner)	12
Full Control	297, 299

# G

Group	Password	for PI	)F file	es		196
-------	----------	--------	---------	----	--	-----

### н

```
Hard Disk Encryption Settings......147
```

# I.

Installing the Device Certificate (Certificate by a Certificate Authority)	lssued 202
Integration Server Authentication	79
Interface	347
IP Address	9
IPP Authentication Password	197
IPsec	209
IPsec Settings	211
IPsec telnet Setting Commands	224
L	

LDAP Authentication	9
---------------------	---

LDAP Authentication - Operational Requirement for LDAP Authentication	
Locked Print10	8
Log off (Administrator)3	6
Log on (Administrator)3	5
Login1	2
Logout1	2

### Μ

Machine Administrator	20
Machine Administrator Settings2	77
Menu Protect167, 1	69

# Ν

Network Administrator	20
Network Administrator Settings	288
Network Security Level	190

### 0

6
7
7
/

# Ρ

Password for Stored Files	116
Password Policy	238
Preventing Unauthorized Copying	101
Print & Delete Scanner Journal	240
Printer	338
Printer Features	
Printer Functions	
Printer Job Authentication	
Printer Job Authentication Levels	
Printer Job Types	89
Printing the Encryption Key	150

# R

Read-only	297, 299
Registered User	12, 299
Registering the Administrator	30
Remote Service	238
Restrict Adding of User Destinations	236
Restrict Display of User Information	236
Restrict Use of Destinations	235
Restrict Use of Simple Encryption	237

Restrictions on Destinations......130

# S

_
3
2
4
0
0
4
6
6
Я. О
9
4
0
1
9
9

# Т

telnet	232
Transfer Log Setting	178
Transfer to Fax Receiver	237
Transmitted Passwords	194
Type of Administrator	167

# U

Unauthorized Copy Prevention10	1
Update Firmware23	8
User11, 20	0
User Administrator19, 29	9
User Administrator Settings29	5
User Authentication12, 23, 40, 9	1
User Code Authentication4	1
User Lockout Function9	5
User Settings - Control Panel Settings	2
User Settings - Web Image Monitor Settings	

# W

Weekly Timer	Code	 241
Windows Aut	hentication	 56
	Authentication for Kerberos au	

Windows Authentication - Operational Requirements for NTLM authentication......56 MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

In accordance with IEC 60417, this machine uses the following symbols for the main power switch:

means POWER ON.

U means STAND BY.

#### Trademarks

Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows NT<sup>®</sup>, Windows Server<sup>®</sup>, and Windows Vista<sup>TM</sup> are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, Acrobat Reader, PostScript, and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ricoh Company, Ltd. is under license.

NetWare is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Apple, AppleTalk, Macintosh, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Bonjour<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

Solaris is a trademark or registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

LINUX<sup>®</sup> is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

RED HAT is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc.

PowerPC<sup>®</sup> is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

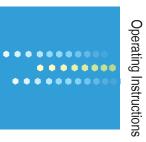
\* The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Server

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Advanced Server

\* [The product names of Windows XP are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Media Center Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Tablet PC Edition

- \* The product names of Windows Vista are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>TM</sup> Ultimate Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>TM</sup> Enterprise Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>TM</sup> Business Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>TM</sup> Home Premium Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>TM</sup> Home Basic
- \* The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Standard Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Enterprise Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Web Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Datacenter Edition
- \* The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 R2 Standard Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition
- \* The product names of Windows NT 4.0 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows NT<sup>®</sup> Workstation 4.0 Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows NT<sup>®</sup> Server 4.0





Security Reference